THE EARLY HISTORY OF EAST AFRICAN COAST

-
- The East African coast stretches from Mogadishu in the north to cape Delgado in the south.
- The earliest people to settle at the coast where initially hunters and food gatherers
- .The Bantu were the first group of people to migrate to the East African coast.
- They came from central Africa around 500AD.
- They settled in towns like Mombasa, Kilwa, Sofala and Malindi.
- The second group of people who settled at the coast were the cushites.
- They migrated from North Eastern Ethiopia and occupied the northern part of the coast.
- The Arabs and Persians were the third group of people to migrate to the coast around 1000 A.D.
- They were mainly traders who crossed the Indian Ocean.
- However other groups like Egyptians, Greeks, Chinese, Indonesians, and Indians also found themselves coming to the coast.

- Their arrival was due to the booming Indian Ocean trade.

THE ZENJ EMPIRE (THE LAND OF AZANIA)

- The Zenj Empire was a stretch of land along the East African coast from Mogadishu up to cape Delgado.
- It's the Arabs who named that area the Zenj Empire meaning "The land of the black people".
- The Arabs thought that it was one Empire but this was not true.
- The coast was made up of 37 independent states.
- These states included; Kilwa, Sofala, Malindi, Mombasa, Pate, Scotra, Kilifi, Zanzibar, Lamu, Oja, Pemba, Gedi, Mafia, Mogadishu, e.t.c.
- Politically each state had its own ruler or leader.
- Each state was equipped with a small army.
- Socially the people settled in small communities and built small wattle houses.
- Economically they carried out Agriculture, Fishing, Hunting, Iron working and Trade.

THE ARABS ON THE EAST AFRICAN COAST

By 1000A.D, the Arabs had started crossing the Indian Ocean to come to East African coast. Their flow into East Africa continued up to – 1500A.D.

Why the Arabs came to the East African coast

- The Arabs were attracted by the booming Indian Ocean trade which would generate profits.
- They were interested in commodities like Ivory, Slaves, animal skins, gold, bee wax e.t.c.
- The Arabs were driven by the desire to spread Islam on the coast i.e. the strong Muslims wanted to Islamize the whole coast and set up a Moslem Empire.
- The East African coast was blessed with good natural habours which could allow even big ships to anchor.
- The moon soon winds also encouraged the Arabs to come to the coast because they blew the dhows towards the East African coast.
- Political persecutions and power struggles in Arabia forced many to seek refuge at the East African coast for example the Yorubi and Busaidi Family struggles in Oman.

- ❖ The Arabs especially the young men were motivated by the spirit of adventure i.e. they had the desire to explore unknown lands /areas.
- ❖ The hospitality of the coastal people also encouraged many Arabs to come to the East African coast.
- ❖ The Arabs were also attracted by the fertile soils at the coast i.e. there was a lot of free land at the coast which the Arabs wanted to use for agriculture.
- ❖ The presence of fresh drinking water at the coast also attracted many Arabs to settle at the East African coast.
- ❖ Religious persecution also forced many Arabs to come and settle at the East African coast.
- ❖ The presence of highly demanded goods e.g. Gold, Slaves, Ivory and Skins forced many Arabs to come and settle at the coast and obtain these commodities cheaply.
- ❖ Some Arabs landed at the E.African coast because they were driven by the monsoon winds.
- ❖ Some Arabs were driven by band wagon influence i.e. they migrated to the coast because they saw others and their relatives migrating.

Effects of the Arabs at the coast

- The Arabs imposed themselves as rulers over the local people making them loose their independence hence the coastal people tasted foreign rule for the first time.
- Inter – marriages between the local people and the Arabs gave birth to a new group of people called the Swahili people.
- With the birth of the Swahili people a new culture called the Swahili culture (Afro Arab culture) developed at the coast.
- The new culture came with a new language called Kiswahili which became the medium of communication along the coast.
- There was spread of Islam i.e. many people at along the coast became Moslems.
- The Arabs introduced new styles of building at the coast e.g. they started building flat topped houses and some with dome shapes made out of stones and bricks.
- The Local people adopted Arabic ways of dressing e.g. Men started putting on Kanzus, Turbans and Caps

while the Women started putting on long dresses and veils.

- ❖ The Sharia law of administration was introduced at the East African coast and Islamic tittles like Sheikh and Sultan were used by the local rulers.
- ❖ The coming of Arabs led to the growth of coastal towns e.g. Kilwa, Malindi, Mombasa and Zanzibar because of the trade contacts with Arabs e.g. magnificent buildings were put up.
- ❖ The Arabs introduced new crops at the E.African coast e.g. Rice, Wheat, Sugarcane, Bananas cloves and the coastal people started growing these crops.
- ❖ Mosques and Quaranic Schools were built to help in the spread of Islam. People along the coast were trained to read the Quran and Arabic language.
- ❖ The Arabs introduced the minting and use of coins in trade. This replaced the old system of barter trade.
- ❖ The coming of Arabs led to the development of slave trade along the coast. Slaves where highly demanded in Arab countries and this greatly depopulated East Africa.
- ❖ The Arabs introduced guns along the coast and this increased warfare and insecurity at the coast.

- ❖ Many people shifted from fishing, farming and herding and then took on trade which was booming at the coast.
- ❖ A powerful and rich class of people emerged along the coast as a result of their participation in trade through which they got a lot of wealth.
- ❖ The Arabs introduced new techniques of boat building along the coast due to the need the ease transport along the Indian Ocean.
- ❖ African resources where exploited to the maximum e.g. Slaves, Ivory were exchanged 4 simple Items like mirrors.
- ❖ East Africa was linked to the outside world because the trade along the coast attracted people from Asia and Europe.
- ❖ Economic Rivalry developed among the coastal town e.g. between Mombasa and Malindi, Kilwa and Sofala. Each town wanted to control and monopolize the trade.
- ❖ Arabic language was introduced along the coast as official language used for administration while Kiswahili was for business.

- ❖ Economic prosperity along the coast attracted the Portuguese towards the end of the 15th century and these looted and plundered the costal wealth.

The features of life along the coast (1000 – 1500 A.D)

Ways of life/characteristics of the coast

- ❖ The coast was characterized by many groups of people e.g. Bantu, Cushites, Arabs, Persians, Greeks, Egyptians e.t.c.
- ❖ Politically most of these people settled in coastal towns e.g. Malindi, Zanzibar, Lamu, and Mafia with each town having its own ruler who was either a Sultan or Sheikh.
- ❖ There were inter-marriages between the people of the coast and Arabs giving a rise to a new race of people called the Swahili people.
- ❖ The Swahili people had their own culture i.e. the A fro – Arab culture / Swahili culture with their own language called Kiswahili
- ❖ Arabic ways of life e.g. dressing, sitting cross legged and people used to wear Kanzus, Veils, and turbans and also build flat topped houses.

- Many people were converted to Islam and it became the dominant form of worship and it replaced traditional beliefs e.g. mosques and Quaranic Schools were built.
- Arabic was the official language used in administration, courts of law and religious circles while Kiswahili was the business language.
- Trade was another main feature of the coast. They traded with people of the interior of East Africa e.g. Nyamwezi e.t.c.
- There existed two classes of people at the coast i.e. the wealthy class lived in luxury houses while the poor slept in mud houses
- The legal system at the coast was based on the Sharia law and the Koran e.g. Islamic titles came into use e.g. Muhtasib in charge of police, Khadi in charge of the judiciary.
- The coast was also characterized with rivalry among the various coastal settlements e.g. Mombasa against Malindi and Kilwa against Sofala
- The coastal people also carried out some agriculture. Crops like millet, rice and wheat were grown.
- The coastal people also domesticated animals like goats, sheep, chicken and cows.

- ❖ The coastal towns were under foreign rule for the first time i.e. Arabs imposed themselves as rulers of the coast.

THE RISE OF THE SWAHILI CULTURE AT THE COAST

- ❖ The Swahili culture developed out of the Arab contacts with the coastal people.
- ❖ On reaching the coast the Arabs intermarried with the coastal people.
- ❖ Intermarriages between the coastal people and the Arabs gave birth to the Swahili people.
- ❖ Due to the influence of the Arabs, the Swahili people became Moslems.
- ❖ A number of mosques and Quaranic schools were built leading to the spread of the Swahili culture.
- ❖ The Swahili people adopted Architecture of Arabs i.e. they built flat topped and dome shaped houses similar to those in Arabia.
- ❖ The coastal people also adopted the Arabic ways of dressing for example Men wore Kanzus, caps and Turbans while the Women wore long silk dresses, veils, bangles and bracelets.

- ❖ Through the Indian Ocean trade, the Swahili culture was also spread along the coast.
- ❖ Africans started using foreign goods from Arabia like beads, clothes, and spices e.t.c.
- ❖ The Arabs also introduced cowry shells as a currency to help in trade and this replaced the barter system of trade. The coastal people adopted the use of cowry shells.
- ❖ The Swahili people also copied / adopted the Arabic social ways e.g. praying five times a day, sitting crossed legged and Arabic burial customs.
- ❖ The Swahili people also adopted the Arabic food stuffs e.g. Rice, Oranges, Wheat e.t.c they also kept some animals e.g. goats, sheep, and cattle.
- ❖ The Swahili culture would have continued to flourish but due to the interruption from the Portuguese around 1458, Afro-Arab culture experienced a decline.

THE INDIAN OCEAN TRADE (1000 –1500 A.D)

- This was the trade that was carried out between the coastal people and Arabs mainly from Arabia and Persia.

- The trade was as a result of the contacts between the land of Azania and Arabia /Persia.
- It was also the trade relationship between the East African coast and Arabia.

ORGANISATION OF THE TRADE

- ❖ The trade was conducted across the Indian Ocean between 1000 – 1500 A.D.
- ❖ The Indian Ocean acted as the link between the coastal people and the Arabs.
- ❖ The trade was conducted among several people i.e. it was between the coastal people and the Arabs, Persians, Chinese, Indians and Malaysians.
- ❖ The trade was based on the prevailing monsoon winds.
- ❖ The winds blew the dhows towards the coast between November and April and then back to Asia between May and October.
- ❖ The main exports from E. Africa included -; Gold, Ivory, Slaves, copper, honey, and bee wax.
- ❖ Most of these goods for export were got from the interior of East Africa.

- The imports from Asia included -; Guns, clothes, Beads, Iron, Utensils e.g. pans, bowls and plates.
- The medium of exchange was barter trade i.e. exchanging goods for goods.
- Later on cowrie shells were introduced as a currency which speeded up trading activities.
- The medium of communication was Kiswahili which people mastered to participate in the trade.
- The foreign traders used vessels known as **dhows** to come to the coast.
- Foreign traders didn't enter the interior because goods found them at the coast.
- The main trading centers at the coast were kilwa and Sofala (Gold) Zanzibar (slaves) and Mombasa (Ivory).
- From the interior, goods were transported by the African middle men for example: Nyika, Yao and kamba.
- The means of transport used to bring commodities to the coast was head porterage.
- The trade was mainly controlled by the Arabs at the coast.
- The local people controlled the transportation of commodities from the interior.

- The Indian Banyans were the main controllers of the finances at the coast. This was because they were wealthy businessmen who acted as the money lenders to the traders.

Effects of the Indian Ocean trade

- The Indian Ocean trade led to the growth of coastal towns due to the coming of Arabs.
- It led to the introduction and growth of the Afro—Arab culture due to intermarriages between the coastal people and the Arabs.
- It led to the introduction and spread of Islam because mosques and Quaranic schools were built.
- Indian Ocean trade led to introduction of new crops e.g. rice, wheat, e.t.c
- People at the coast abandoned fishing, farming and they joined trading activities because it was more profitable.
- The Islamic system of Administration was introduced and it was based on the Sharia law in the Quran
- Economic Rivalry between coastal towns was increased because each town wanted to control the trade.

- Indian Ocean trade led to the introduction of guns and this increased inter-tribal conflicts which led to bloodshed, insecurity and disorder.
- Indian Ocean trade led to the introduction of new techniques of boat building.
- Indian Ocean trade led to the replacement of barter trade with currency such as rupees, cowry shells and later on small copper coins were introduced.
- Indian Ocean trade led to the introduction of slave trade and slavery which cursed a lot of human suffering.
- The people at the east Africa coast were introduced to new foreign commodities e.g. mirrors , beads, necklaces , bungles etc.
- With increased slave trade and inter-tribal conflicts, the population at east Africa declined.
- The coastal people adopted new styles of dressing e.g. men put on kanzus turbans while women put on long silk dresses and veils.
- Indian Ocean trade attracted the Portuguese in 1498 to come and conquer the coast. They looted and destroyed many coastal towns.

- ❖ The Arabs who came to trade later imposed themselves as the rulers over the local people making them loose their independence.
- ❖ The Indian Ocean trade opened up E.A to the outside world and this attracted more visitors to come to the coast especially from the far east .
- ❖ Literacy was promoted at the coast through the building of Quaranic schools and other Arabic literature.
- ❖ Kiswahili was adopted as the main business language while Arabic become the official language.

THE GROWTH AND IMPORTANCE OF THE LEADING COASTAL TOWNS

- The East African coast was made up the 37 independent states.
- Some of these states included kilwa, Mogadishu, Mombasa, Zanzibar, Kilifi, Pate, Oja and Malindi.

FACTORS FOR THE RAPID GROWTH OF COASTAL TOWNS

- The Indian Ocean trade between the Arabs and the coastal people was the major reason behind the development of the coastal towns for example people generated a lot of wealth.
- The monsoon winds that facilitated the movement the Arabs also led to the development of the coastal towns for example they eased the transportation the goods and movements the people.
- The coming of many foreigners to the coast also led to the development of coastal towns. For example the Arabs, Greeks, Indians etc.
- The introduction of Islam by the Arabs created a sense of brotherhood which led to the development of coastal towns.
- The introduction of Kiswahili and Arabic also led to the development of coastal towns because it improved on communication.
- The introduction of the Sharia law of administration based on the Quran also led to the development of coastal towns.
- The introduction of guns by Arabs imposed security hence leading to the growth and development of coastal towns.

- ❖ The introduction of cowry shells and rupees led to the development of trade which in turn led to the development of the coastal towns.
- ❖ The presence of highly demanded goods e.g. Gold. Ivory, slaves and Iron at the coast also led to the development of the coastal towns.
- ❖ The cool coastal climate also attracted many foreign visitors to the coast who contributed towards the growth of the coastal towns.
- ❖ The good natural harbours at the coast for example at Mombasa and Zanzibar also led to development of coastal towns.
- ❖ The fertile soils at the E.African coast also attracted many foreigners and they also supported agriculture for example rice, wheat and clove growing.
- ❖ Many towns developed on Islands giving them natural defense from attackers.
- ❖ The presence of a big population at the coast also led to the development of the coastal towns for example they provided labour and market for goods.

PRINCIPLE CENTERS OF POWER AND WEALTH AT THE COAST

KILWA:

- Kilwa was probably founded by Persian migrants.
- They displaced the cushiest and Bantu around the 13th century.
- Its rulers were the Afro- Shiraz who came from the Banadir coast.
- They established a strong dynasty and controlled the town up to the time of the Portuguese.
- Under Ali Ibn – Al Hassan, Kilwa was transformed into a very powerful town.
- He conquered areas like Pemba which improved her status at the coast.
- Kilwa developed due to it its monopoly in Gold trade and she controlled the Gold trade route from sofala.
- Kilwa also carried out raids on her neighbours like Pemba and Mafia which provided revenue.
- Kilwa also became a centre of Arabic Architecture i.e. mosques and impressive flat topped houses were built.
- Kilwa had the biggest mosque called Husni Kubwa which was one of the wonders at the coast.
- Kilwa also become the centre of Islam i.e. it had Moslems who were devoted to the spread of Islam.

- ❖ Many of them penetrated into the interior of East Africa to acquire trade items e.g. slaves.
- ❖ With time, Kilwa started minting its own silver copper coins to facilitate trade.
- ❖ By the end of the 15th century, Kilwa had started declining.
- ❖ This was due to the emergence of Mombasa and coming of the Portuguese in 1498.

MOMBASA:

- ❖ It was assumed that Mombasa was founded in the 12th century.
- ❖ It was founded by the Afro-Shiraz Arabs who displaced the Arabs.
- ❖ Mombasa was founded as an export centre for slaves and Ivory and the town had a strong element of African culture.
- ❖ Mombasa grew rich because of the Indian ocean trade and she started expanding in the second half of the 12th century.

- The good natural harbours at Mombasa and her strategic position attracted the Arabs which led to her development.
- Due to intermarriages between the Africans and the Arabs, Mombasa became a centre of Swahili culture.
- From the 15th century onwards, Kilwa had started declining giving Mombasa a chance to grow to fame and power.
- Mombasa started putting up beautiful buildings and this attracted many people for settlement.
- Mosques and Quaranic schools were built at Mombasa and its inhabitants were very devoted Moslems.
- However, Mombasa was always at war with Malindi.
- When the Portuguese landed at the coast, it was finally defeated and Fort Jesus was setup.

ZANZIBAR:

- Zanzibar started as a small fishing village.
- Its earliest occupants came around the 11th century.
- These were later joined by the Arabs & Persians.

- ❖ They intermarried with the local people giving birth to the Swahili people and culture.
- ❖ Zanzibar gained a lot of wealth from the Indian Ocean trade.
- ❖ She traded mainly in slaves, ivory and animal skins.
- ❖ The wealthy Arabs also carried out agriculture and they set up coconut and clove plantations.
- ❖ Between **1200-1500 AD**, Zanzibar was one of richest coastal settlement with fine permanent stone buildings.
- ❖ Zanzibar was one of first coastal towns to mint and use her own coins.
- ❖ She maintained her trade contacts with the Indians.

DECLINE OR COLLAPSE OF THE COASTAL TOWNS

- Between 1500 - 1700 AD, the East African coast greatly experienced a decline.
- This was also the same period when Portuguese were controlling the East African coast.
- ❖ The Portuguese chased away the Arabs who had greatly developed the coast.
- ❖ The Portuguese were constantly involved in rebellions against the Africans at the coast.

- The Portuguese destroyed and burnt down the coastal towns e.g. Kilwa and Mombasa's fine buildings were all destroyed the Portuguese.
- The Portuguese were imposing heavy taxes on the local people and this caused massive poverty .
- There was a decline of the Indian Ocean trade when the Arabs were chased away by the Portuguese.
- Scarcity of trade items also led to the decline of the coastal towns this was because of the over exploitation of ivory, gold e.t.c.
- The Portuguese looted & squandered the coastal wealth i.e. they stole everything that was precious from the coast.
- The Portuguese monopolized the trade at the coast and they denied Africans a chance of participating in trade.
- The effects of slave trade also led to the decline of the coast i.e. the coast was depopulated and the strong and energetic youth were taken.
- Inter -coastal town conflicts also led to the decline of coastal towns i.e. Rivalry between coastal towns

e.g. Malindi against Mombasa and Kilwa against Sofala.

- ❖ Attacks from Segeju & Zimba man eaters also led to decline of coastal towns i.e. they forced many people to run away from the coastal towns.

Revision questions

1. a) what was the land of **Zenj/Azania**? Or who were its inhabitants by 1000 A.D?

c) Describe the ways of life of the early inhabitants by 1000 A.D.

2 .a) Why were the Arabs interested in settling at the East African coast by 1000 A.D?

b) How did their settlement affect the peoples of the East African coast?

3. a)Explain the **rise and development** of the **Swahili culture** at the East African coast before 1500 A.D.

b) How did Islam influence the lives of the coastal people by 1500A.D?

4. a) Describe the **ways of life** of the East African coastal people by 1500 A.D.

b) What were the reasons for the development of the East African coastal states?

5. a)Describe the **organization** of the Indian ocean trade by 1500 A.D **OR** Describe the **trade relationship** between **Azania** and **Arabia** during the period 1000-1500 A.D.

b) What were the effects of this trade on the Peoples of East Africa?

6. Describe the growth and development of any two of the following coastal towns.

a) Kilwa b) Mombasa c) Mogadishu d) Zanzibar e) Malindi.

7. a) Describe the characteristics of the East African coast by 1500 A.D.

b) What reasons led to the decline of coastal towns between 1500A.D – 1700 A.D?

PORTUGUESE RULE AT THE EAST AFRICAN COAST (1500-1700 AD)

- These were the first group of Europeans to come and settle at the East African coast.
- They started arriving at the coast in 1498 A.D.
- They displaced the Arabs who had stayed at the coast for over 500 years.

Why the Portuguese came to E.Africa

- ❖ The Portuguese being Christians wanted to spread Christianity along the East African coast especially after ending the spread of Islam.
- ❖ The Portuguese were looking for their Christian king called John Prester who had disappeared and was believed to be in the interior of North. East Africa.
- ❖ The Portuguese wanted to establish a large commercial empire along the coast so as to monopolize the Indian Ocean trade
- ❖ The Portuguese were looking for a direct sea route to India and they wanted to use the E.African coast as a base for resting and repairing of ships.

- The Portuguese also wanted to revenge on the Moslems who had converted them to Islam in Turkey (**IBERIAN PENINSULAR**) as early as 1700A.D.
- The Portuguese came to the E.African coast as a result of adventure and exploration i.e. they wanted to explore unknown lands.
- The Portuguese were also attracted by the coastal wealth i.e. the E.African coast had a lot of mineral and precious stones.
- The Portuguese were attracted by the fertile coastal soils which they wanted to use for growing crops to provide food to the Portuguese sailors.
- The East African coast also had good natural harbours which would act as bases for resting, repairing of ships and getting food and water.
- The Portuguese were also attracted by the coastal climate i.e. favorable rainfall and temperature to support Agriculture.
- The Portuguese wanted to prevent other European powers from gaining access to the coast (Indian Ocean Trade) i.e. they were unwilling to share the coastal wealth.

- ❖ The hospitality of the coastal people also led to the coming of the Portuguese i.e. Malindi made friendly relations with the Portuguese.
- ❖ The Portuguese also wanted to be prestigious as a great colonial power with wealthy colonies.
- ❖ The Portuguese wanted to deprive the Egyptian and Turkish forces of any help that they would get from fellow Moslems at the coast and that's why Fort Jesus was built.

STAGES DURING THE PORTUGUESE CONQUEST AT THE COAST (1498 – 1510 A.D)

- ❖ The Portuguese conquest of the East African was not a single event i.e. it took over 10 years and it was by force.
- ❖ In 1498, Vasco da Gama carried out a thorough survey of the coast and he returned to Portugal and made a report to King Emmanuel.
- ❖ He reported about the booming coastal trade, the presence of the Arabs and the need to use force to conquer the coast.

- In 1500, Pedro Alvares Cabral made on unsuccessful attack to capture Sofala hoping to control her gold trade.
- In 1502, Vasco Da Gama returned on his second journey with a fleet of 19 ships.
- He captured Kilwa where Sultan Ibrahim was forced to pay tribute to Portugal.
- However when Vasco Da Gama's fleet left for GAO (India), the sultan of Kilwa stopped paying tribute to Portugal.
- In 1503, Ruy Ravasco Laurenco came with reinforcements and was able to capture Islands of Mafia, Zanzibar and Pemba forcing them to pay tribute to Portugal.
- In 1504, Lopez Surez unsuccessfully attacked Kilwa and its harbours.
- The gold trade was disrupted but Sultan Ibrahim still refused to pay the tribute.
- In 1505, Francisco D'Almeida on his way to GAO (India) attacked three towns i.e. Sofala, Kilwa and Mombasa.
- In all these towns, the Portuguese well trained soldiers over powered the coastal Sultans.

- In 1506, Captain Tristan De Cunha captured the Islands of Lamu, Kismayo, Pate, Brava and Oja and Scotra.
- In 1509, Alfonso D'Alberques captured the Islands of Mafia, Pemba, and Zanzibar.
- Other towns like Malindi simply welcomed and co-operated with the Portuguese.
- By 1510, all the coastal towns were under the Portuguese and they were divided into the northern and southern states.

Why did the Portuguese conquer the East African coast with a lot of ease?

- The Portuguese were well informed about the nature of Arabs at the coast e.g. Vasco da Gama had visited the coast and he advocated for the use of force to defeat the Arabs.
- The Portuguese were militarily superior i.e. they had better ships and guns e.g. the Canon Gun which scared the Africans at the coast.
- The coastal people had inferior weapons like spears and outdated guns which could not compete with the superior weapons of the Portuguese.

- The Coastal people were disunited and could not join hands to fight a common enemy e.g. Malindi and Mombasa had strong rivalry.
- The Portuguese had well trained soldiers who were experienced in warfare they also carried muskets and armored clothes.
- The Portuguese were skilled in naval warfare i.e. they could fight on water while the coastal people were used to fighting on land.
- The Portuguese soldiers were financially supported by their home government and the rich Portuguese merchant and therefore they had enough food, ships and weapons.
- The Portuguese always used surprise attacks to defeat the coastal societies for example at night and on market days.
- The Portuguese were very ruthless and brutal and they looted and burnt coastal towns to ashes e.g. Kilwa and Mombasa and this scared other towns.
- The Portuguese used the divide and rule policy to ensure that the coastal people would lose e.g. the

Portuguese allied with Malindi to fight against Mombasa.

- ❖ The Coastal states had weak economies which could not sustain the fight against the Portuguese who were economically stronger.
- ❖ Some coastal states were already weakened by slave trade which reduced their population.
- ❖ Some coastal settlements were already weakened by the Segeju and Zimba man eaters.
- ❖ Portugal did not have any rival with other European powers at the coast to engage them in war hence easing their conquest.
- ❖ Africans were further weakened by famine and diseases and therefore could not put up any resistance against the Portuguese.
- ❖ The Portuguese were so determined and united to achieve their goal of conquering the coast.

Problems faced by the Portuguese at the coast

- ❖ The E.African coast was very big and too wide covering over 400km and therefore the Portuguese could not effectively control the wide area.

- The Portuguese officials were very few to control the whole of the East African coast.
- Portugal lacked enoughskilled man power to effectively administer the coast.
- The few Portuguese officials at the coast were very arrogant and inefficient, harsh / Ruthless, greedy and corrupt hence the coastal people hated them.
- The coastal climate was very hostile and unhealthy for the Portuguese who were whites i.e. it was either too hot or too wet.
- The Portuguese also faced a problem of language barrier i.e. they could not easily communicate with the coastal people.
- The Portuguese lacked enough money (funds) to effectively administer the coast due to the decline of the Indian Ocean trade.
- The Portuguese also faced a problem of Turkish sea pirates e.g. Ali Bey who attacked their ships and coastal settlements.
- Diseases also claimed many lives of the Portuguese who had come to the coast e.g. Malaria and sleeping sickness.

- The distance from Portugal to the coast was too long and therefore the Portuguese could not easily get supplies like medicine and guns.
- The Portuguese were constantly attacked by the Segeju and Zimba man eaters which also led to a reduction in their numbers.
- The Portuguese faced constant rebellions from the people at the coast which consumed a lot of Portuguese resources and energy.
- The Portuguese were Christians yet most of the coastal people were Moslems and this led to cultural and religious differences.
- The Portuguese were so unfriendly to the coastal people e.g. they built their own Churches and Schools which affected their rule at the coast.

Effects of Portuguese rule at the coast

- Portuguese built Fort Jesus in Mombasa in 1593 as a military base but today it serves as tourist attraction for Kenya.
- The Portuguese introduced new crops at the coast e.g. Maize, Cassava, Pineapples, Paw paws,

groundnuts, Guavas e.t.c which have provided food to E.African communities.

- ❖ The Portuguese improved on farming by encouraging the use of cow dung as manure.
- ❖ The Portuguese introduced new items at the coast e.g. Karata (playing cards), headscarves and table clothes.
- ❖ The Portuguese improved on the Swahili language by adding some words e.g. Pesa meaning money, Meza meaning table and Motoka meaning car.
- ❖ The Portuguese also provided strong links between E.Africa and India because their main head quarters were in India (GAO)
- ❖ The Portuguese presence at the coast also opened up E.Africa to other European countries e.g. Britain, France, and Holland.
- ❖ The Portuguese introduced Christianity although it failed to take root at the coast because most people hated the Portuguese.

- ❖ The Portuguese led to the decline of the Indian Ocean trade because they chased away the Arabs from the coast.

- ❖ The Portuguese made no attempts to uplift the living standards of the coastal people but were just interested in gold trade than developing the coast.
- ❖ The Portuguese were always at war with coastal towns e.g. Mombasa which led to massive destruction of property and decline of towns.
- ❖ The Portuguese rule resulted into widespread poverty at the coast because they introduced heavy taxes which made the coastal people poor.
- ❖ Their raids, unsettled life and killing of the most productive people resulted in destruction of crops that further led to famine.
- ❖ The Portuguese looted and squandered the coastal wealth which led to the decline of the coastal towns.
- ❖ The Portuguese made unfriendly relations with the coastal people which led to cultural and religious differences.

Portuguese administration at the coast

- ❖ By 1510, the coast was effectively under Portuguese rule.
- ❖ The Portuguese used the divide and rule policy to administer the coast.

- The coast was divided into two i.e. Northern states and Southern states each under a captain.
- The Northern states were ruled by the captain stationed at Malindi.
- The Southern states were ruled by the captain stationed at Mozambique.
- Before 1507, Mozambique was the over-all headquarter of the Portuguese authority at the coast.
- All captains had to report to the Portuguese Viceroy at Gao in India.
- Captains were supposed to collect taxes and tribute, enforce payment of customs duty on imports and exports, keep law and order and suppress rebellions.
- They were harsh and always burnt and destroyed settlements to control rebellions.
- Portuguese rule was full of corruption because they employed ruthless and corrupt army commanders.
- They lived isolated lives and never attempted to create good relations with the Africans.
- Fortified garrisons were built in Mozambique and Sofala to suppress / defeat all rebellions.

- In 1593, Fort Jesus was built at Mombasa because of her rebellious nature and also to strengthen Portuguese administration.
- A captain was appointed to settle permanently in Mombasa because of her rebellious nature.
- They looted coastal towns and denied Africans a chance to participate in trading activities.
- Later on, the Southern states were reunited which the Northern states to form one big Portuguese Empire.
- Socially, they tried to spread Christianity but with little success.
- Economically, they over taxed their subjects and collected tributes to raise revenue.
- The 200 years of their rule witnessed decay of coastal towns and slow movement of goods.

Ways of life under the Portuguese at the coast (1500 – 1700 A.D)

- The 200yrs of Portuguese rule at the coast were characterized by wars, continuous economic decline and decay.

- The coastal people did not gain from the Portuguese rule at any time.
- At the same time, the Portuguese did not prosper because of the decline in trade.
- Trade under the Portuguese rule declined due to the Portuguese corrupt ways of handling affairs.
- The Portuguese looted the coastal towns of all valuable items for example the gold at Kilwa and Sofala.
- The Portuguese denied the Africans a chance of participating in trade and they stole all the Proceeds from the trade.
- Towns were demolished and burnt during the Portuguese rule for example Mombasa and Kilwa lost their beautiful buildings.
- People greatly suffered during the Portuguese rule for example they were flogged (canned) in public and humiliated for small offenses for example failure to pay tax.
- The Portuguese era was also characterized by unfriendliness and isolation.
- They had their own churches and lived in their own communities.

- The Coastal people hated the Portuguese and called them infidels and nick named them ‘Afriti.
- This was because most of the coastal people were Moslems yet the Portuguese were Christians.
- Rebellions became the order of the day at the coast as the coastal people always resisted the Portuguese administration in a bid to overthrow them.
- Life was unproductive, oppressive and disappointing to the Africans.

Why the Portuguese lost control of the coast

- The Portuguese had very few qualified personnel to administer the coast.
- Portuguese administrators at the coast were very corrupt and arrogant.
- Portugal was a very small country with fewer resources to finance the administration of the coast.
- The Coast was too big (400km) and the Portuguese could not effectively administer.
- Religious differences i.e. the coastal people were Moslems while the Portuguese were Christians.

- The Portuguese failed to establish friendship with the coastal people leading to hatred and wars.
- Language barrier affected them and could not communicate easily with the coastal people.
- Tropical diseases e.g. malaria claimed many lives of Portuguese reducing their number.
- The hostile climate at the coast also made their stay at the coast very difficult.
- Portugal was too far away from the coast which made communication with their home government difficult.
- Portugal was forced to unite with Spain in 1640 which meant that Portugal wouldn't control the coast alone because of the demands of the Union with the Spain.
- The frequent rebellions at the coast greatly weakened the Portuguese e.g. many lost their lives.
- The arrival of more powerful states particularly Britain, the Dutch and French traders around the 16th century who also wanted to control the Indian Ocean trade.

- ❖ The Challenges from the Turkish sea pirates who constantly raided the Portuguese settlements and ships.
- ❖ The climate at the coast also proved harsh and unsuitable to most Portuguese and many died thus reducing their number at the coast.
- ❖ Portugal could not keep fortified garrisons all along the coast, e.g. they only had forts at sofala, Mozambique and Mombasa.
- ❖ The coming of the Oman Arabs in december1698 led to the eventual collapse of the Portuguese rule at the coast.

Revision questions

1. a) Why were the Portuguese interested in controlling the East African coast 1500 A.D? **OR** Why did the Portuguese wish to control the East African coast after 1498 A.D?

b) How did the Portuguese administer the East African coast between1500 to 1700 A.D?

2 .a) Why did the Portuguese conquer the East African coast with a lot of ease?

b) How were they able to control it for over 200 years?

3. a) Why did the Portuguese establish their control over the East African coast after 1498?

b) Why were there numerous resistances during their rule at the coast?

4. a) How did the Portuguese gain control of the East African coast between 1487 to 1510? **OR** How did the Portuguese establish themselves on the East African coast?

b) Why did African resistance against the Portuguese fail? **OR** Why did the coastal states lose their independence so easily to the Portuguese?

5. a) Describe the Portuguese conquest of the East African coast up to 1510. **OR** Describe the course of the Portuguese conquest of the East African coast.

b) What problems did they meet in controlling this area during the 16th century?

6. a) Describe the political, social and economic ways of life at the coast between 1500 to 1700 A.D. **OR** Describe

the characteristics of the East African coast between 1500 to 1700 A.D.

b) What were the effects of Portuguese rule on the East African coast by 1700 A.D?

7. a) Why did the Portuguese lose control of the area North of River Ruvuma by 1700 A.D? **OR** Why did the Portuguese rule finally come to an end by 1700 A.D?

b) How did their rule affect the coastal people? **OR** Why are they remembered in the history of East Africa?

8. a) How did the 200 years of Portuguese rule affect the coast of East Africa?

b) Why had they lost their control by 1700?

THE OMAN ARABS AT THE EAST AFRICAN COAST (1700 – 1880A.D)

- After the final defeat of the Portuguese in 1698, the Oman Arabs imposed themselves at the E.African coast as the new rulers.
- Mombasa was to become the centre of Oman rule at the coast.

Why the Oman Arabs wished to control the East African coast

- ❖ Politically, the Oman Arabs wanted to exercise their political powers by imposing themselves as the new rulers of the coast.
- ❖ The Oman Arabs also wanted to impose taxes on the East African coastal people so as to generate revenue for their country Oman.
- ❖ The Oman Arabs wanted to rule the coast as compensation for helping the coastal people defeat the Portuguese i.e. they believed that their help was not for free.
- ❖ The East African coast was free from conflicts compared to Oman which had the Yorubi - Busaidi family conflicts.
- ❖ The Oman Arabs wanted to control the coast to make sure that the Portuguese did not return e.g in 1778 the Portuguese tried to re-capture Fort Jesus which scared the Oman Arabs.
- ❖ Mombasa which was under the Mazrui Arabs was rebellious to Oman rule, therefore the Oman Arabs

wanted to crush Mombasa and set an example to other towns.

- ❖ Economically, the Oman Arabs wanted to gain from the profitable Indian Ocean trade e.g they wanted to control the gold wealth in Kilwa.
- ❖ The coastal climate was favorable for agriculture compared to the arid conditions in Oman.
- ❖ The coast was blessed with fertile soils for agriculture hence the Oman Arabs wanted to set up plantations.
- ❖ The East African coast was also strategic enough with good natural harbors which could allow big ships to anchor.
- ❖ The Oman Arabs wanted to effectively exploit the cheap slave labour at the coast i.e. they did not want to use fellow Muslims as workers.
- ❖ Socially, the Oman Arabs wanted to strengthen and spread Islam which had greatly declined during the Portuguese rule.
- ❖ The Oman Arabs wanted to maintain social and culture ties with their Muslim brothers at the coast.

THE STRUGGLE BETWEEN THE COAST AND THE OMAN ARABS

(BUSAIDI - MAZRUI CONFLICTS)

- In 1698, Fort Jesus fell in the hands of the Oman Arabs after chasing away the Portuguese.
- In 1741 a conflict arose between the Busaidi and Mazrui.
- The Busaidi were Arabs from Oman
- The Mazrui were the coastal Arabs mainly settled in the town of Mombasa.

CAUSES OF THE BUSAIDI—MAZRUI CONFLICTS

- ❖ The Busaidi family wanted to be recognized as the rulers of the coast which the Mazrui never accepted.
- ❖ They both wanted to control the lucrative Indian Ocean trade which resulted into conflicts.
- ❖ The Mazrui were tired of foreign rule and wanted independence.
- ❖ The Mazrui had suffered a lot under the Portuguese and did not wish to be under a new colonial master.
- ❖ The Mazrui governors of Mombasa had declared themselves independent of Oman rule and this was challenged by the Busaidi who looked at it as a form of rebellion.

- The Mazrui at the coast never liked the appointment of Busaidi rulers e.g. Mombasa saw no need of paying tribute to Oman.
- The Mazrui governors were very proud and they believed that Mombasa belonged to them even before coming of the Portuguese.
- The Mazrui believed that the coast was theirs since they felt that the Busaidi couldn't administer the coastal effectively.
- The Mazrui had gained a lot of confidence after defeating the Portuguese in 1698 and hence they saw this as a step in regaining their independence.
- Able leadership especially under Seyyid said led to the Busaidi - Mazrui conflicts because he greatly organized the Oman Arabs to fight the coastal Mazrui.
- Mazrui fighters were assured of support from interior tribes like Nyika and Kamba which gave them morale to fight for their independence.
- Mazrui fighters had acquired guns due to their earlier trade contacts which strengthened their army.
- Mazrui fighters were united due to their strong element of Islam which encouraged them to fight.

- ❖ The Busaidi Arabs were involved in Yorubi-Busaidi conflicts back in Oman which opportunity the Mazrui wanted to exploit to gain their independence.

NB: When Seyyid said came to power, he managed to bring the coastal struggles to an end.

Course of the Busaidi-Mazrui conflicts

- ❖ In December 1698, Fort Jesus fell in the hands of the Oman Arabs after chasing away the Portuguese.
- ❖ In 1728, the Portuguese attempted to recapture the coast but were driven out with the help of the Oman Arabs.
- ❖ In 1741, the Yorubi Sultan Saif Ibin of Oman appointed Mohammed Ibin Uthman of the Mazrui family to be the governor of Mombasa.
- ❖ He was expected to be loyal to the ruler of Oman.
- ❖ After the death of the Yorubi Sultan Ibin Saif, the Busaidi took over power in Oman.
- ❖ A new ruler of the Oman Empire called Sultan Ahmad Ibin Said was installed.
- ❖ The Mazrui governors at the coast and Mohammed Ibin Uthman of Mombasa refused to recognize Sultan Ahmad Ibin Said's administration.

- The Mazrui governors declared themselves independent because to them, the Oman ruler was supposed to be from the Yorubi family and not Busaidi family.
- Sultan Ahmad Ibin Said of Oman decided to wage war against the Mazrui Arabs.
- Mohammed Ibin Uthman the governor of Mombasa was killed in cold blood which angered the Mazrui at the coast.
- Ali Ibin Uthman, a brother to the murdered governor took over power as the ruler of Mombasa and he was determined to defend the Mazrui power at the coast.
- In 1804, Sultan Ibin Seyyid Said of the Busaidi family took over power in Oman.
- Ali Ibin Uthman continued with the expansion of Mazrui influence at the coast and by 1807, it had stretched from Pangani to Malindi.
- By this time, it was only Kilwa that was loyal to the Oman Arabs.
- When Abdullah Ibin Ahmad took over power in Mombasa he tried to get support from the British.

- He found that the British had already signed an agreement with the new Oman ruler Sultan Ibin Seyyid Said.
- In 1817, Seyyid Said freed Pate and forbade all her subjects from trading with the Mazrui in Mombasa.
- He also ordered Zanzibar to liberate Pemba and Brava from Mazrui rule.
- Seyyid said also attacked Pemba in 1822 and drove out the Mazrui governor hence expanding the Busaidi influence.
- In 1824, Seyyid Said personally commanded the forces that bombarded Mombasa and almost brought Mazrui rule to an end.
- Mazrui rulers finally accepted Oman rule after that defeat.
- However, when Seyyid Said went back to Oman, the Mazrui governors again stopped recognizing the Oman rule.
- He returned in 1829 but he failed to defeat the Mazrui who had got support from the Nyika in their struggle.
- It was Seyyid Said's son Khalid who captured Fort Jesus the headquarters of the Mazrui and threw some

of Mazrui family members and the governor into the Indian Ocean.

- ❖ In 1837, Seyyid Said tricked some of the Mazrui family members and took them to the Persian Gulf where he starved them to death.
- ❖ In 1840, Seyyid Said transferred his capital from Muscat to Zanzibar to completely end the power struggles at the coast.

The reign of Sultan Ibn Seyyid Said (1840-1856)

- Seyyid Said was born in 1791 in Muscat the capital city of Oman.
- He was born to Sultan Ibn Said Ahmad of the Busaidi family.
- He came to power in 1804 when his father was killed in battle.
- He transferred his capital from Muscat to Zanzibar in 1840.
- Unfortunately, Seyyid Said died in 1856 having done much for the coast and East Africa as a whole.

Why Sultan Ibn Seyyid Said transferred his capital from Muscat to Zanzibar

- Seyyid said wanted to be close to Mombasa because of its rebellious nature.
- Seyyid Said had greatly admired the cool coastal climate.
- The fertile soils also attracted Seyyid Said because they could support clove growing.
- Zanzibar had good natural harbours which would allow big ships to land easily.
- He wanted to control the lucrative Indian Ocean trade rather than leaving it to his relatives who were corrupt and unreliable.
- The East African coastal people were considered to be more loyal to Seyyid Said than the people of Oman.
-

- to shift his capital to Zanzibar after the murder of his cousin Bedr Saif.
- Seyyid Said also wanted to establish regular trade links between the East African coast and the interior of East Africa.

- ❖ Seyyid Said also wanted to exploit the cheap slave labor at the coast to use on his clove plantation
- ❖ Seyyid Said also wanted to gain popularity and prestige as a ruler of two territories at the same time.
- ❖ Zanzibar also had a security advantage since it was an Island and it would offer maximum protection naturally compared to Oman.
- ❖ Seyyid Said wanted to end the Busaidi – Mazrui conflicts once and for all.
- ❖ Zanzibar was strategically located as a market for goods and this would enable him to control and expand the interior trade.
- ❖ Seyyid Said also had the belief that the waters of Zanzibar were sweeter than those of Oman and this forced him to shift his capital from Muscat to Zanzibar.
- ❖ He also wanted to check on the activities of the Indian Ocean sea pirates.
- ❖ Religious persecutions in Oman forced him to shift his capital to Zanzibar.

Changes introduced by Seyyid Said in Zanzibar

- ❖ Seyyid Said developed the clove industry in Zanzibar and today Zanzibar is the leading producer of cloves.

- He signed commercial treaties with European countries for example Britain in 1839, France 1844, Hungary 1844, Germany and U.S.A which attracted many foreign traders at the coast.
- He transformed Zanzibar into an entre - port i.e. it became an international market for traders from all parts of the world.
- Encouraged trade with interior tribes of East Africa e.g. Yao, Nyamwezi and Sukuma who always supplied slaves.
- He fought sea pirates with the help of the British navy which brought about peace and increased trade on the Indian Ocean.
- He organized personal caravans into the interior of E.Africa to bring goods to Zanzibar hence encouraging the development of long distance trade.
- He invited the Indian Banyans to settle along the coast who advanced loans to the Zanzibar's to go into the interior and buy commodities.
- He also encouraged the use of small copper coins in trade to replace the barter system.
- He introduced the system of taxing all imports and exports as a means of raising revenue.

- His settlement also encouraged slave trade i.e. the interior was depopulated as many people were taken to work on his clove plantations.
- Encouraged Europeans to open up trading posts in Zanzibar to increase trading activities e.g. in 1844 the Germans opened up one.
- Managed to end the quarrels that existed along the coast between the Busaidi and Mazrui.
- He attracted foreigners to Zanzibar for example Arabs, Indians, Europeans and this created a population of mixed culture.
- Seyyid Said was also involved in the signing of treaties to end slave trade and slavery in East Africa for example in 1822 and 1845 he signed treaties with the British.
- Socially, Seyyid Said encouraged the spread of Islam and built many Quaranic schools.
- He also encouraged the spread of the Swahili culture along the coast and the interior of E.Africa.
- United coastal towns under one leadership.
- He also encouraged use of Sharia law of administration and in justice.

Why did the Arabs have little interest in the interior of East Africa before 1500 A.D?

- They were mainly interested in spreading Islam at the coast hence no need to penetrate into the interior.
- African middlemen always brought goods to the coast and therefore no need for Arabs to penetrate into the interior.
- The Arabs lacked serious competition at the coast due to their small number hence only concentrating at the coast.
- Some came to the coast as political refugees and therefore did not want to look for more trouble in the interior.
- They lacked the knowledge about the economic potential of the interior of East Africa.
- The Arabs also lacked the geographical knowledge about the interior of East Africa and hence feared getting lost.
- Language barrier also forced the Arabs to concentrate at the coast because they could not easily communicate with the people in the interior.
- Absence of well developed transport means into the interior also forced the Arabs to neglect the interior.

- Tropical diseases like malaria and sleeping sickness also scared the Arabs hence forcing them to stay at the coast.
- Interior tribes didn't welcome the Arabs because they had not yet known their importance.
- Hostile tribes in the interior of East Africa also scared away the Arabs from the interior.
- Inter-tribal and civil wars were rampant in the interior and this created insecurity which scared away the Arabs.
- Wild animals like lions and thick forests also made the Arabs fear the interior.
- The good coastal climate also presented good living atmosphere for the Arabs and they forgot about the interior.

Why did they finally develop interest in the interior of East Africa after 1500 A.D?

- The Arabs developed the urge to exploit the abundant trade opportunities in the interior.
- Increased demand for interior goods forced the Arabs to go into the interior and acquire the goods e.g. slaves.

- The arrival of Seyyid Said in 1840 also led to increased Arab penetration into the interior due to increased demand for slaves to work on his clove plantations.
- Presence of Indian banyans who gave traders loans to go into the interior for goods also led to Arab penetration into the interior.
- Arabs had got knowledge about the economic potential of East Africa's interior which forced them to penetrate into the interior.
- Prominent Arab traders like Tippu-Tip had already settled in the interior and therefore invited others into the interior.
- African leaders like Muteesa I of Buganda and Mirambo of the Nyamwezi invited many Arabs into the interior due to the need for guns.
- Population increase at the coast also forced the Arabs to penetrate into the interior to occupy the free land.
- The desire to spread Islam in the interior also forced the Arabs to penetrate into the interior of East Africa.
- The stiff competition for trade items at the coast also forced the Arabs to penetrate into the interior and acquire cheaper goods.

- The need to do away with middlemen also led to the Arab penetration into the interior so as to earn more profits.
- The presence of guns also ensured security for the Arabs hence they started venturing into the interior.
- The coming of the Portuguese also led to competition for trade control at the coast hence leading to the migration of the Arabs into the interior.
- Transport means had been well developed in the interior e.g. use of donkeys and this forced the Arabs to penetrate into the interior.

Revision questions

1. a) Why did the Oman Arabs wish to control the East African coast after 1698?

   b) Why was there a struggle between the coast and the Oman Arabs?

2. a) Why was there a struggle for the control of the East African coast between 1698-1840? **OR** What were the causes of the Busaidi - Mazrui conflicts?

   b) Describe the course of the struggle during that period.

3. a) Describe the main events in the struggle to control the coast between 1698-1840.
   b) How did Seyyid Said settle these conflicts?

4. a) Why did Seyyid Said choose Zanzibar as the centre of his commercial activities?
   b) How did he build up the economy of Zanzibar?

5. a) Why did Seyyid Said transfer his capital from Muscat to Zanzibar in 1840?
   b) Describe the economic, social and political development of Zanzibar under Seyyid Said.

6. a) Why did Zanzibar become the capital of Oman by 1840?
   b) Show the importance of Seyyid Said in the history of East Africa. **OR** Why is Seyyid Said still remembered in the history of East Africa?

7. a) Why did the Arabs have little interest in the interior of East Africa before 1500 A.D?
   b) Why did they finally develop interest after 1500 A.D?

MIGRATIONS AND SETTLEMENT IN EAST AFRICA (1000 – 1880 A.D)

From 1000A.D, East Africa received many groups of people coming from different directions. The new invaders included;

i) Cushites and the plain/highland nilotes from Ethiopia
ii) **Bantu** from Niger / Congo Basin
iii) **Luo (River-lake-Nilotics)** from southern Sudan (Bahr-el Ghazel)
iv) **Ngoni** from South Africa

THE BANTU MIGRATION

ORIGINS

- Bantu is a linguistic word describing a group of people who speak a similar language.
- They have a root word/suffix 'Ntu/Ndu' meaning a person.
- They belong to the Negroid family.
- Their origins and migrations are still unclear among historians.

- Some historians believe that the Bantu came from West Africa around the Cameroon highlands.
- However, most historians believe that they came from the Katanga region in South Eastern Congo.
- Their migration was gradual and seasonal i.e. spread over a long time.
- Believed to have entered East Africa by the first millennium i.e. 1000 A.D.
- They entered East Africa under different groups and clans.
- They entered East Africa through the Western part using different routes
- The Bantu form the largest group of people in E.Africa.
- They include tribes like, Banyankole, Baganda, Bakiga, Bagishu, Chagga, Nyamwezi, Kikuyu, Luyia, and Pokomo.
- The major reason for the migration was search for fertile soils that could support Agriculture.

Causes of Bantu migrations

❖ Population pressure; The Bantu were forced to migrate from their cradle land to E.A because the

population had increased and they were searching for settlement in new areas.

- ❖ Search for fertile lands; since the Bantu were farmers they ended up migrating to E.Africa in search of new areas with fertile soils for Agriculture.
- ❖ Internal conflicts; The Bantu migrated to E.Africa due to misunderstandings with in their communities e.g. witchcraft and cannibalism.
- ❖ Misfortunes; it is also assumed that the Bantu cradle land witnessed misfortunes that claimed many people and their animals thus the fortune tellers directed the Bantu to move to safer areas.
- ❖ Land-pressure .Due to population explosion, the pressure increased on land resulting into land conflicts and the defeated groups ended up migrating into E.Africa in search of new lands for settlement.
- ❖ Natural calamities for example famine, drought, earthquakes, floods and diseases. These forced the Bantu to search for new areas for settlement and ended up in E.Africa.
- ❖ Adventurism /Love for adventure .The youth may have wanted to explore and adventure into new lands where they could practice their skill of iron working.

- ❖ Unsuitable geographical climate. The climate of the Congo forest was inhabitable and this necessitated moving of Bantu into E.Africa.
- ❖ External pressure. The Bantu were constantly attacked by their neighbors and this forced them to look for new areas which were free from civil wars.
- ❖ Poor leadership. Some of the Bantu migrants experienced poor leadership in their cradle land which forced them to migrate to E.Africa so as to exercise their leadership skills.
- ❖ The need to export their iron working culture some people maintained that the Bantu migrate wanted to export their Iron working culture and search for market for their Iron products.
- ❖ Search for water and pasture since the Bantu were animal keepers they migrated to E.A in search of new grass land and water for their animals.
- ❖ The band wagon influence some of the Bantu simply moved to E.A because they saw their friends plus relatives migrating.

Course/organisation of the Bantu migrations

The Bantu entered E.A in different groups each using its own route.

❖ The first group was the **western Bantu (Interlacustrine Bantu)**.

- This was the first group of the Bantu to migrate into East Africa.
- They formed the largest group of the Bantu to migrate to East Africa.
- They entered East Africa through the West from the Niger-Congo basin.
- They used the route between Lake Albert and Lake Edward.
- They settled around the North West shores of Lake Victoria.
- They are believed to have migrated between (**1000—1300 A.D**).
- The Bantu in this group gave rise to such as Baganda, Banyoro, Batoro, and Bakiga.
- The other Bantu moved to the Eastern and Western Kenya giving birth to Bagishu and Luyia.

❖ **The central and Northern Tanzania Bantu;**

- They formed the second group of the Bantu to enter E.A.
- They also entered East Africa through the West from the Niger-Congo basin.
- They used the route between L. Edward and Tanganyika.
- They formed some tribes like the Sukuma Nyamwezi, Zinza, and Gogo.
- Their migration took place between 1000—1300 A.D.

❖ **The coastal and highland Bantu**.

- They are also known as the **Eastern Bantu.**
- They settled along the coast and highland hence the name coastal and highland Bantu.
- They are a continuation of the Central and Northern Tanzania Bantu.
- They crossed the dry Tanganyika plateau between 1000 – 1300 A.D.
- These comprise of that group of Bantu that continued with their migration and crossed the Taita hills and Mt. Kilimanjaro.

- The Chagga, Taita, Pare decided to settle around these hills permanently and came to be known as the **highland Bantu**.
- The Pokomo, Giryama, Nyika and Segeju moved north wards along the coast to Shungwaya.
- At Shungwaya, there was dispersal due to pressure from the Galla and Somali community.
- Due to pressure, the Nyika moved southwards along the coast.
- These came to be known as the **coastal Bantu.**
- Another group of the Eastern Bantu was forced away from Shungwaya to the Kenyan highland.
- This group included the Chuka/Kikuyu, Kamba and Embu.

❖ **The southern Tanzania Bantu**.

- These formed the fourth group of the Bantu migration into E.A.
- Their migration took place between 1000—1300A.D.
- They entered East Africa through the West from the Niger-Congo basin.

- They used the route between Lake Malawi and Lake Tanganyika.
- They settled in Southern Tanganyika in areas such as Ruvuma, Songea and Mbeya.
- They included Hehe, Yao, Pogoro, Zaramo, Makonde, Bena, Ngindo, Gogo and Rufigi.

❖ The **Ngoni:** Around 1840, another Bantu group moved into East Africa and these were the Nguni who came from South Africa and formed the last wave of the Bantu migration into E. Africa.

Effects of the Bantu migrations

❖ They introduced iron working and use of iron tools like hoes, pangas, and axes.

❖ The Bantu introduced the growing of crops on a large scale with the help of iron tools.

❖ Population increased in the area was the Bantu settled this also meant that there was increased food production.

❖ The Bantu also introduced new food crops in E.A e.g. Bananas, Beans, Yams e.t.c today many tribes still depend on these food crops.

- ❖ They introduced new farming methods e.g. mulching, shifting cultivation, irrigation.
- ❖ They introduced new languages in E.A for example Luganda, Lusoga, and Runyankole.
- ❖ The Bantu absorbed most of the tribes they met in E.A especially the Bushmen and Cushites. Some who refused to be absorbed migrated to other areas.
- ❖ The Bantu in some cases abandoned their cultures and copied those of the people they met, e.g. circumcision among the Bagishu, age set system, pastoralism.
- ❖ The Bantu displaced some people in E.A. especially those in fertile areas e.g. Ngoni displaced the Yao in their fertile lands in southern Tanzania.
- ❖ They introduced a new system of building permanent houses e.g. they built round grass thatched houses.
- ❖ There were intermarriages between the Bantu who settled along the coast with the coastal Arabs giving birth to the Swahili people.
- ❖ The Bantu introduced a new system of centralized administration in E.A which led to the formation of kingdoms e.g. Buganda, Ankole, Bunyoro, Nyamwezi e.t.c.

❖ The Bantu led to clashes over land with the communities that they met in E.A.

THE LUO MIGRATION

Origins

- The Luo are also referred to as the **River-lake nilotes**.
- They originated from Bahr el- Ghazel in southern Sudan.
- They are known as River –Lake Nilotes because they settled along Rivers and lakes.
- Their migration took place between 1350 - 1500 A.D.
- They entered East Africa through the Northern part of Uganda following the Albert Nile.
- They included tribes like Alur, Langi, Acholi, Japadhola and Ja-luo of Western Kenya.

Causes of the Luo migration

❖ Search for water and pasture, the Luo migrated from their cradle land because they lacked enough water sources and pasture for their animals.

- ❖ Population pressure: Their cradle land was over crowded and due to over grazing of their animals in Bahr-el-Ghazel.
- ❖ Internal conflicts: Some Luo migrated to E.A because they were constantly included in civil wars over land and animals.
- ❖ External-conflicts: There was a lot of pressure from their neighbors especially the Galla from Ethiopia which forced the Luo to migrate into E. Africa.
- ❖ The hostile climate of the southern Sudan also led to the Luo migration into E. Africa. i.e. prolonged drought.
- ❖ The Luo also had the desire to export their political culture and organization. E.g. some of them wanted to exercise their political rights.
- ❖ Band Wagon effect: i.e. some of the Luo migrants simply migrated as a result of seeing their relatives moving.
- ❖ Love for adventure: Some Luo migrants especially the youth were interested in knowing what was happening in other areas.
- ❖ Natural calamities: e.g. drought and famine also led to Luo migration into E. Africa.

- ❖ The southward movement of the Sahara desert also led to the Luo migration into E. Africa.
- ❖ Some historians attribute the Luo migration to over flooding since they lived along the banks of R Nile.
- ❖ Misfortunes and epidemics e.g. sleeping sickness and Nagana led to the Luo migration into E. Africa.
- ❖ The Luo also migrated to look for fertile areas that could support agriculture since some of them were farmers.
- ❖ The Natural aggressive tendencies of the Luo also led to their migration into E.A so as to conquer the weak people.
- ❖ The need to settle around water bodies and rivers since they did some fishing also forced them to move.

Course/organisation of the Luo migration

- The Luo left Bahr-el-Ghazel around the 15th century.
- They then moved southwards following the River Nile under their leader Olum.
- Around the 16th century, the Luo settled at Pubungu (present day Pakwach).
- Therefore Pubungu became their area of dispersal/separation.

- From Pubungu the Luo split into two groups.
- Each group was under its own ruler and moved into a different direction.
- One group led by Gipir moved westwards, crossed the Nile and settled in the Northern parts of Lake Albert.
- They intermarried with the Lendu, Okebo and Madi to form the Alur presently found in Nebbi district.
- Another group under Labongo moved southwards and settled at Pawir (Chope) in Northern Bunyoro kingdom.
- One group still under Labongo that remained at Chope, moved southwards to come into contact with the Bachwezi to form the Luo-Bito Dynasty.
- Labongo left Chope and moved East wards to form Acholi people presently found in Gulu and Lira.
- Another group of the Luo moved eastwards from the Pubungu through Acholi land, Lango, Teso land up to Eastern Uganda in the Budama area.
- They gave birth to the present Japadhola found in Tororo District.
- However some of the Luo continued into Western Kenya e.g. the Joka—Jok moved directly from

Pubungu and settled in the Lamogi hills of the Nyanza province.

- The Jok—Omollo migrated through Busoga, Samia and Bukedi and finally settled in the Nyanza region to form the Samia of Western Kenya.
- The Jok-Owiny moved from Pubungu and settled temporarily in Budama before finally settling in Singoma Alego in the Nyanza province of Western Kenya.
- The Abasuba were the last group of the Luo to move into Kenya.
- These were refugees from Buganda, Busoga and Ssese Islands and they settled in the southern Nyanza province.

Effects of the Luo migration

❖ There were inter-marriages between the Luo and the local people leading to the formation of new tribes i.e. Alur, Langi Japadhola.

❖ The coming of the Luo led to the formation of new kingdoms which were all using centralized system of administration e.g. Buganda, Bunyoro and Ankole.

- ❖ The Luo introduced chiefdoms in Northern Uganda and western Kenya e.g. Rwotship in Northern Uganda was a Luo creation.
- ❖ The coming of the Luo led to the final collapse of Bunyoro-Kitara Empire / Chwezi Empire and led to the formation of the Luo-Bito Dynasty.
- ❖ The Luo introduced pet names (Empaako) erg Akiiki Abwoli, Amooti, Apuuli, Atwooki etc especially in Bunyoro and Toro.
- ❖ The Luo introduced new crops in E.A e.g. millet, sorghum, groundnuts which are staple food for many tribes in Western, Northern and Eastern Uganda.
- ❖ The Luo introduced new economic activities in E.A e.g. nomadic pastoralism and also introduced the short horned cattle.
- ❖ The population of E.A increased as a result of the Luo influx and this created conflicts over land.
- ❖ The Luo put to use what would have been idle land due to population increase.
- ❖ The Luo also developed trade within E.A because they introduced new commodities e.g spears and arrows.

- ❖ The Luo introduced royal burial grounds for the kings e.g. in Bunyoro the jaw bones of the Omukama have to be removed before burial and buried separately.
- ❖ The Luo led to the civil wars increasing in E.A as a result of their contacts with the local people of E. Africa.
- ❖ Many people were displaced from E.A to other regions as a result of the Luo migration into Tanzania to form Karagwe kingdom.
- ❖ In Bunyoro, they introduced new items of the royal regalia e.g. royal crown, royal fire, and royal drums e.t.c

NGONI MIGRATION (1820—1860)

Origins

- THE Ngoni were close relatives of the Zulu and Ndwandwe people from South Africa.
- They were Bantu who belonged to the negroid race.
- They originally lived in Natal province in the south East of the Drakensburg Mountains.
- The Ngoni were Nguni speaking people.

- They are believed to have left South Africa around 1820.
- They left South Africa because of Shaka Zulu's expansionist wars.
- This was during the **Mfecane** period where there was a lot of war and suffering in South Africa.
- The Ngoni were forced to flee and moved northwards.
- They left South Africa under different leaders e.g. Zwangendaba, Maputo and Zulugama.
- They moved through central Africa and finally settled in East Africa (southern Tanganyika).

Causes of Ngoni migrations

❖ Shaka created a period of wars (Mfecane) that forced many people to migrate including the Ngoni.

❖ Population pressure in their cradle land also led to the Ngoni migration into East Africa.

❖ Internal conflicts e.g. land and clan conflicts also led to the Ngoni migration.

❖ The Ngoni were farmers and therefore migrated in search of new lands that were fertile to support agriculture for example Ufipa plateau.

- ❖ The influence of good leaders e.g. Zulugama, Zwangendaba, Maputo etc also led to the migration of the Ngoni into East Africa.
- ❖ Love for adventure also forced the Ngoni to migrate especially the youth who wanted to explore new areas North of River Limpopo.
- ❖ Misfortunes and natural calamities e.g. diseases, floods, e.t.c also led to the Ngoni Migration.
- ❖ The ruthless army training of Shaka Zulu also forced some of the Ngoni fighters to escape to East Africa.
- ❖ The Boer invasion of South Eastern Africa from the cape made the Ngoni lose their land which forced them to move to East Africa.
- ❖ The need to export their culture also led to Ngoni migration into East Africa especially by the youth.
- ❖ Band Wagon effect i.e. some of the Ngoni Migrants moved into East Africa after seeing their relatives and friends moving.
- ❖ Search for water and pasture since the Ngoni kept animals they migrated into East Africa in search of fresh pastures and water for their animals.

Course of the Ngoni migrations

- The Ngoni left South Africa in two (2) distinct groups.
- They left around 1820 and each group took a different direction.
- The first and biggest group was led by chief Zwangendaba.
- They moved through central Africa crossed R. Zambezi, traveled through Malawi and finally settled around Ufipa where they destroyed the small settlements.
- The second and smaller group was led by chief Maputo.
- It moved through Mozambique, Eastern Malawi and finally settled around Songea among the Yao.
- This group was known as the Maseko Ngoni.
- Around 1848, Zwangendaba died and his group split into 5 small groups.
- Three of these groups went back to central Africa settling in present day Malawi and Zambia.
- The two remaining groups settled permanently in Tanganyika and these were the Tuta and Gwangara Ngoni.

- The Tuta Ngoni moved northwards to the lands of the Holoholo where they were defeated.
- They continued up to Nyamwezi land in 1850 where they captured a young Mirambo.
- The Gwangara Ngoni led by Zulugama moved East wards destroying the Hehe.
- By 1860, they had reached Songea where they clashed with the Maseko Ngoni whom they defeated and forced them to flee.
- The defeated Maseko Ngoni split into two groups.
- One group under chief Maputo moved southwards crossed river Ruvuma and finally settled in Mozambique.
- The other group fled northwards to Morogoro and these came to be known as the Mbuga Ngoni.
- During their movements the Ngoni always captured people.
- The boys were absorbed into their army and girls were married off and this swelled their number.

Reasons why the Ngoni were successful against the people of E.Africa

- They had a strong army e.g. they always recruited captured boys into their army which strengthened their army.
- The Ngoni had superior military organization which they had copied from Shaka.
- Their army was divided into battalions or regiments called Impis for effectiveness in battle.
- The Ngoni always used Guerilla tactics and this would scare other societies which easily gave up.
- The Ngoni had superior weapons e.g. the short stabbing spear (Assegai) and they had shields.
- They had superior tactics of fighting e.g. they surrounded the enemy using the cow-horn method.
- Ngoni fighters were professionals who had received a lot of military training and were always free from duties at home.
- The Ngoni were determined to remain in East Africa because they feared to go back to South Africa in case of defeat.
- The Ngoni invaders were fully united under their leaders and this helped them to defeat the East African societies with a lot of ease.

- The Ngoni fighters had a lot of experience in warfare because they had participated in large scale wars during their stay in South Africa.
- The Ngoni always used surprise attacks e.g. at night and on market days hence always caught their enemies unaware.
- The East African societies were disunited and couldn't offer any support to their neighbours against the Ngoni.
- E.African societies had already been weakened by slave trade which had claimed all the strong men.
- East Africa had also been weakened by attacks from Segeju and Zimba man eaters who also reduced on the population.
- Ngoni fighters were never affected by famine because they always looted for food wherever they passed.
- Ngoni also used the scorched Earth policy on those that tried to resist them e.g. Burning villages, food stores, and huts and scared others who simply gave in without a fight.

- ❖ Most of the Ngoni enemies were weak and small societies that were disorganized and therefore could not challenge the Ngoni military might.
- ❖ The East African societies had poor economies that could not sustain the fights against the Ngoni.
- ❖ The East Africans had inferior weapons that could not compete with those of the Ngoni.

Effects of the Ngoni Migration

- ❖ Their migration created a period of wars in areas that were previously peaceful e.g. the Ufipa communities were destroyed and devastated.
- ❖ The Ngoni migration resulted into the spread of epidemic diseases in the southern and central Tanganyika e.g. smallpox and Malaria.
- ❖ Their migration created a new generation of war lords and leaders e.g. Nyungu ya mawe and Mirambo.
- ❖ There was increase in slave trade because of the Ngoni confusion, Chaos and disorganizations.
- ❖ The Ngoni spread their culture e.g. most people who were captured and absorbed by the Ngoni copied their Nguni language.

- ❖ The Ngoni invasion also disrupted the long distance trade caravans especially along the Southern route which was dominated by the Yao.
- ❖ The Ngoni invasion led to the formation of warrior groups e.g. The Maviti and Ruga Ruga .These were bandits who terrorized southern and central Tanganyika.
- ❖ The Ngoni invasion led to the people of southern Tanganyika losing their land to the Ngoni.
- ❖ There was population increase in Southern Tanganyika were they settled e.g. among the Yao.
- ❖ Famine broke out in many societies since no farming and harvesting could take place because of the Ngoni raids.
- ❖ Many people copied the Military tactics i.e. cow horn method and adopted their weapons e.g. Assegai (short stabbing spear) for defense.
- ❖ Their migration led to the decline of some states e.g. Bena and Sangu because they never had the capacity to resist the Ngoni aggression.
- ❖ The Ngoni raids led to heavy loss of lives especially those that tried to resist their movement e.g. the Yao.

- ❖ There was deculturalisation and detribalisation e.g. the Ngoni displaced people from their original homelands making them lose their culture.

Revision questions

1. a) Who were the Bantu? **OR** Describe the origins of the Bantu speaking people?

   b) What were the causes of the Bantu migrations into East Africa?

2. a) Describe the course of their migration in East Africa before 1800 A.D.

   b) What were the effects of their migration and settlement in East Africa?

3. a) Describe the movement and settlement of the **Eastern Bantu** into East Africa. **OR** Describe the movement and settlement of the **Western Bantu** into East Africa.

   b) What were the effects of their invasion on the people of East Africa?

4. a) Describe the organization of the migration of the Bantu speaking people into East Africa.

b) How were the people of East Africa affected by their coming?

5. a) Who were the River-Lake Nilotics? **OR** Describe the origins of the Luo speaking people.

b) Why did they leave their cradle land? **OR** What were the reasons for their migrations into East Africa?

6. a) Describe the course of the migrations of the Luo **(River - Lake Nilotics**) into East Africa.

b) What were the effects of their migration and settlement on the peoples of East Africa?

7. a) Who were the Ngoni? OR Describe the origins of the Nguni speaking people.

b) Why did they leave their cradle land for East Africa in the mid 19th century?

8. a) Describe the migration and distribution of the Ngoni peoples into East Africa in the mid 19th century.

b) What were the consequences of this invasion on Tanganyika by 1860?

9. a) Why was the Ngoni invasion of East Africa in the mid 19th century successful?

b) What were the **results/impacts/outcomes** of their migration into East Africa by 1860?

10. a) Why did East African resistance against the Ngoni fail in the mid 19th century?

b) How did this migration affect mainland Tanganyika by 1860?

11. a) Who were the Plain/Highland Nilotes? **OR** Describe the origins of the Plain/Highland Nilotes.

b) Why did they migrate from their cradle land?

12. a) Describe the course of the migration and settlement of the Plain/Highland Nilotes.

b) What impacts did their migration have on the people among whom they settled?

THE RISE OF THE INTERLACUSTRINE KINGDOMS

- This is the area surrounding Lake Victoria.
- Many Kingdoms flourished in this region and the most important of these were Bunyoro –Kitara, Bunyoro, Buganda, Ankole, Toro, Karagwe, and Wanga.

ABATEMBUZI

- The Batembuzi were the first to inhabit the interlacustrine region.
- Their origins are not clear and are surrounded in myths and legends.
- Traditions in western Uganda suggest the Tembuzi fell from heaven.
- They were semi gods and were able to perform miracles.
- The Tembuzi couldn't die but just disappeared and went back to heaven at the end of their earthly life.
- The Tembuzi dynasty is believed to have been founded by Ruhanga (creator or god) assisted by his brother Nkya.
- Ruhanga had no sons but Nkya had four, namely Kairu, Kahima, Kakama – Twale and Kintu.

- Kairu became the ancestor of cultivators, Kahima the ancestor of herders and Kakama – Twale the ancestor of rulers.
- Local traditions claim that Ruhanga and Kintu went back to heaven.
- Upon Ruhanga's ascending to heaven, Kakama – Twale took over the kingdom.
- Kakama – Twale later disappeared to heaven and was succeeded by his son Baba who was later succeeded by Ngonzaki.
- Ngonzaki was succeeded by Isaza who was recorded as the last ruler of the Tembuzi.
- When Isaza disappeared, his gate keeper - Bukuku imposed himself as the ruler but people refused to recognize him as their leader.
- The Tembuzi were farmers growing mainly cereals and also kept animals.
- They also slept in grass thatched huts.
- This Kingdom lasted for 4 to 5 generations between 1200 – 1350 A.D.
- The Tembuzi divided their Kingdom into Ssazas each under a chief.

- They introduced the succession system in Bunyoro-Kitara.
- After the collapse of the Tembuzi dynasty, the Chwezi took over the interlacustrine region.

THE CHWEZI RULE (1350 – 1500 A.D)

Origins

- Their origin is not clear.
- Most of what is known about them is derived from myths and oral traditions.
- The Bachwezi were the successors to the Batembuzi.
- They were also semi gods and wandering pastoralists.
- Some historians believe that they were Galla or Cushitic people from Ethiopia.
- Others suggested that they must have been Greeks, Portuguese or possibly Egyptians.
- Others claim that they were probably Bantu speaking people.
- They were believed to have entered Uganda through the North or North East.
- Unlike the Tembuzi, they were true human beings.
- They were tall and light skinned people.

- They were demi-gods who possessed super natural powers and performed miracles.
- They were pastoralists and mainly kept the long horned cattle.
- They were known by various names e.g. Chwezi, Tutsi, Hinda and Hima.
- The Bachwezi formed the Bunyoro-Kitara Empire.
- The first ruler of the Bachwezi was Ndahura and their last ruler was Wamara.

ORGANISATION OF BUNYORO KITARA EMPIRE

Political organization

❖ The Bachwezi were organized under one central authority i.e. they had a centralized monarch.

❖ The overall leader of the Bachwezi had the title Omukama.

❖ Omukama had absolute powers to life and death.

❖ The empire was divided into small states or provinces, districts and counties each under a chief.

❖ The chiefs were close relatives of the Omukama and formed a council of representatives.

- ❖ Bigobyamugyenyi was the capital of Bunyoro-Kitara Empire.
- ❖ The rulers lived in reed palaces with palace officials, Women and Slave artisans
- ❖ The Chwezi palaces were protected by enclosures called **Ebirembo**.
- ❖ The Chwezi Empire had a large standing army that fought using spears, bows and arrows.
- ❖ The Chwezi army also dug ditches around their capital and cattle kraals for purposes of protection.
- ❖ The Chwezi had a Royal Regalia which included the royal crown, royal drum and spears.
- ❖ These were symbols of power respected by everyone.

Social Organisation

- ❖ The Bachwezi had two classes of people in society i.e. the Bahima and Bairu.
- ❖ Bairu were cultivators while Bahima were pastoralists and rulers.
- ❖ They built grass thatched huts smeared with cow dung and decorated inside with a variety of hand crafts.

- They were great sportsmen who spent their free time playing games e.g. Omweso and wrestling.
- They were great hunters who used long spears.
- They built reed palaces for the Omukama to stay in.
- Religiously, they believed in many gods.
- They had many strange and super natural powers and could even disappear when annoyed.

Economic Organisation

- They were a pastoral group who mainly kept the long horned cattle.
- The Chwezi were also farmers who grew coffee, beans and millet.
- The Chwezi also carried out Iron working and made implements like hoes, pangas and spears.
- They were also involved in pottery and made round bowls; Jars and shallow basins.
- Basket weaving also came with them.
- The bark cloth industry also formed part of their economy.
- They also made cow-hide sandals.

- They involved themselves in barter trade with their neighbors exchanging Iron implements and salt for food.

THE DECLINE OF CHWEZI EMPIRE

- The empire had grown too big to be effectively administered.
- The empire lacked strong and capable rulers especially after the death of Omukama Wamara.
- Misfortunes e.g. death of the darling cow **Bihogo** scared the Bachwezi who were forced to migrate.
- Wide spread internal rebellions especially from the Bantu also led to the decline of the Chwezi empire.
- Epidemics like Small pox and Malaria claimed many of their animals since they were a pastoral community and they ended up migrating to other areas
- Famine also broke out in the region forcing many people to leave the area in search of new areas that could provide them with food.
- The Chwezi rulers were greedy and oppressive which annoyed their subjects hence creating rebellions within the empire.

- ❖ The Chwezi also lost their popularity especially after people had realized that they were ordinary human beings not semi-gods which undermined their power.
- ❖ Conflicts among the various princes over power also weakened their hold on power and influence.
- ❖ Several communities broke away from the Chwezi empire for example Buganda, Bunyoro, Ankole leading to the decline of their power and influence.
- ❖ The Luo invasion is what finally broke the backbone of the Chwezi Empire i.e. the Luo set up the Luo-Bito Dynasty and forced the Chwezi to flee in different directions.

The importance of the Bachwezi in the History of E.Africa

- ❖ They introduced the centralized system of governance which was later adopted in many societies.
- ❖ They introduced hierarchical system of administration whereby administration was broken down into smaller units.
- ❖ The Chwezi are also remembered for introducing the idea of a standing army in the kingdom.

- The Chwezi also introduced the system of having a royal regalia comprising of the symbols of power in a community e.g. drums, spear e.t.c
- The Bachwezi were the founders of ancient Bunyoro-Kitara Kingdom which spread from Western Uganda to Western Kenya and Northern Tanganyika.
- They introduced games which are still popular in Uganda today e.g. local wrestling and Omweso.
- The Bachwezi also introduced coffee and banana growing in E.Africa which are still cash crops.
- The Chwezi introduced the idea of palace officials, royal women and slave artisans who were trained in administration.
- The Chwezi are also remembered for their super natural powers i.e. they were a strange group of people who performed miracles and could disappear when annoyed.
- They introduced a religion called Abashomi which is still evident up to today in Western Uganda particularly in Bunyoro.
- They built their capital at Bigobyamugenyi which is still a tourist attraction for Uganda today.

- ❖ The Bachwezi introduced the idea of royal enclosures (Ebirembo) in palaces such as Bigo, Mubende, Ntusi and kibengo. These were mainly for protecting cattle.
- ❖ The Chwezi also introduced the idea of grass thatched houses smeared with cow-dung and decorated with a variety of handcrafts inside.
- ❖ The Chwezi also introduced social classes in society especially in Western Uganda where the Bairu are the cultivators and subjects while the Bahima are the cattle keepers and ruling class.
- ❖ They introduced iron working and they made implements such as spears, Pangas, Hoes e.t.c.
- ❖ Discovered hot springs e.g. Kitagata in Western Uganda.
- ❖ They also developed the art and craft industry e.g. they introduced basket weaving.
- ❖ They also introduced bark cloth manufacture.

1. **BUNYORO KINGDOM**

ORIGINS

- Bunyoro was under Bito rulers and sprung up after the collapse of the Chwezi Empire.

- Local traditions state that Isingoma Rukidi Mpuga was the founder of Bunyoro kingdom.
- Bunyoro was a loose confederation of provinces or Ssazas ruled by the chiefs.
- The growth and expansion of Bunyoro greatly depended on its rulers i.e. Abakama e.g. Omukama Kamurasi (1852- 1869) and Omukama Kabalega (1870 – 1897).
- The Kingdom stretched as far as Buganda, Toro and Ankole in the west to Busoga in the East and West Nile in the North.

Factors for the growth and expansion of Bunyoro

❖ Presence of able leadership i.e. Bunyoro was gifted with strong, active and ambitious leaders for example Omukama Kamurasi and Omukama Kabalega who expanded the Kingdom.

❖ The Kingdom had a highly developed centralized system of administration which ensured easy administration.

❖ The strong army of Abarusula built by Kabalega also contributed to the growth of Bunyoro. It was armed with guns got through trade with the Khartoumers and Coastal Arabs.

- Bunyoro was also gifted with fertile soils which ensured constant supply of Bananas, Yams and millet to sustain the population.
- Her good climate with heavy rainfall also supported agriculture to sustain the population.
- Bunyoro also expanded because it constantly raided her weak neighbours for example Ankole, Toro and Busoga.
- Bunyoro also participated in trade with her neighbours and also participated in the long distance trade (L.D.T) with the Arabs and Khartoumers where she got guns.
- Bunyoro had Iron deposits and through Iron working she was able to make spears and arrows for defense.
- Bunyoro also had plenty of salt deposits which she used to exchange with her neighbours.
- The decline of the Chwezi dynasty also favoured the growth and expansion of Bunyoro Kingdom. This gave a chance to Rukidi Mpuga to start up his own empire i.e. Bunyoro.

THE STRUCTURE/ORGANISATION OF BUNYORO KINGDOM

Politically

- The kingdom had a centralized system of administration with the Omukama as the political head.
- Omukama had absolute powers i.e. to appoint, promote and dismiss any of his chiefs.
- The Kingdom was divided into provinces, districts and counties each under a chief for effective administration.
- Most of the chiefs came from distinguished Families and they ruled on behalf of the Omukama.
- Most of the chiefs resided at the Omukama‘s palace to ensure their loyalty to him.
- The Chiefs had to provide the Omukama with gifts such as cattle, beer, grains and men to serve in the army and at the palace.
- Chiefs were also responsible for tax collection and ensuring law and order within the kingdom.
- Initially, Bunyoro had no standing army and therefore all able bodied men would be called upon to form an army and the General would be appointed by the Omukama.
- The army had the duty of defending the Kingdom against external threats, expanding the kingdom, carrying out raids and spying on the Omukama’s enemies.

Social Organisation

- The Banyoro had classes in their society with the Bahima as the rulers and the Bairu as the Subject class.
- Religiously the Banyoro believed in a supreme being called Ruhanga (God) who was believed to be the creator of all things.
- Apart from Ruhanga, the Banyoro had many other small gods and each clan and family had its own favourite god.
- The Banyoro had national gods like Wamara god of plenty, Mugizi –god of Lake Albert and Muhigo the god of war.
- Sacrifices were always offered to these gods to please them.
- The Banyoro also had royal regalia which included drums, spears, animal skins, the throne, royal crown and these were highly respected as symbols of power.
- The Banyoro were always united by a similar culture, language and way of dressing.

Economic Organisation

- Cattle rearing were the main economic activity of the Bahima and the herdsmen always moved with their cattle in search of pastures and water.

- ❖ Agriculture or crop growing was practiced by the lower class of peasants (Bairu) and they mainly grew millet.
- ❖ Salt mining was another economic activity in Bunyoro got from Lake Katwe.
- ❖ Salt was used for feeding animals and the rest was exported to her neighbours like Buganda.
- ❖ The Iron working industry was also developed in Bunyoro and they manufactured hoes, spears, and pangas. e.t.c.
- ❖ Trade was another economic activity of Bunyoro e.g. she traded with her neighbours and also participated in the long distance trade with the coastal Arabs.
- ❖ Bark cloth making was also done in Bunyoro to provide clothes to the people.
- ❖ Banyoro also involved them in pottery and sold the products outside the Kingdom.
- ❖ These who stayed near Lake Albert and rivers carried out fishing.
- ❖ Revenue was also collected from vassal states e.g. Buganda and Acholi which were supposed to pay tribute to the Omukama.

- ❖ The Banyoro also engaged in hunting for food, Elephants for Ivory and the Rhino for horns.
- ❖ The army of Bunyoro always raided it's neighbours for slaves and Ivory hence contributing to the economy.

REIGN OF OMUKAMA KABALEGA

- Kabalega was born in 1830 to Omukama Kamurasi.
- He spent his early years in Bulega where he acquired the name Kabalega meaning son of Bulega.
- After the death of his father in 1869, Kabalega was involved in a power struggle with his brother Kabigumire.
- Kabigumire was supported by the royal family and provincial chiefs.
- Kabalega used the support of the commoners, Arab mercenaries and his father's body guards to defeat his brother.
- Kabalega ascended to power in 1870.

CONTRIBUTIONS OF KABALEGA

- He started with the defeat of the opposition from the royal family by killing and exiling members of the royal Family and chiefs who supported his rival brother Kabigumire.
- Kabalega established a highly centralized administration with him as the political head.
- He had a chain of chiefs in the provinces to ensure stability.
- Kabalega built a strong standing army of the Abarusula well armed with guns acquired from the L.D.T with Arabs.
- Kabalega destroyed the social system of classes in the society and even appointed commoners to positions of responsibility.
- Kabalega expanded the Kingdom to occupy areas such as Toro, Bwamba, Bulega, Katwe, Lango, Buganda e.t.c and many others. This was done with the help of the Abarusula.
- Kabalega encouraged trade with the coastal Arabs and Khartoumers from the North e.g. Bunyoro supplied Ivory and salt and in return she got guns.
- Kabalega encouraged the Banyoro to grow enough food especially millet to reduce famine.

- He also built enough granaries (food stores) which ensured proper food storage.
- Kabalega encouraged the spirit of nationalism among the Banyoro for example he always reminded them of the Baganda threat and that if they didn't unite Buganda would finish them off.
- However Kabalega's programme of building Bunyoro was interfered with by the British.
- In 1891, he engaged the British in the guerilla warfare as he resisted colonial rule.
- In 1898, he was captured in Lango with Mwanga and was sent to exile in Seychelles Island.
- Kabalega died later in 1923 in Jinja as he tried to return to Bunyoro from exile.
- Kabalega was buried at Mparo in present day Hoima district.

DECLINE OF BUNYORO

- The Kingdom had grown too big which made it very hard for effective administration.
- Weak leadership especially after Omukama Kabalega also led to the decline of Bunyoro.

- ❖ The steady growth of Bunyoro's neighbours e.g. Buganda, Ankole, Toro also weakened her.
- ❖ Internal conflicts within Bunyoro also lead to her decline e.g. vassal states constantly revolted against Bunyoro.
- ❖ The loose confederation of chiefdoms and break away of areas such as Buganda, Toro and Ankole also meant Lose of revenue for the Kingdom.
- ❖ The Iron rich deposits of Kooki were taken away by Buganda which meant that Bunyoro would not make enough arrows and spears for defense.
- ❖ Frequent revolts by the Bunyoro princes also weakened the kingdom for example Omukama Kasagama established the Kingdom of Toro.
- ❖ In the late 19th century Buganda started trading with the Arabs who supplied her with guns to strengthen her army that managed to defeat Bunyoro.
- ❖ The arrival of the British increased Buganda's power and supported her campaigns that led to the final defeat of Bunyoro.
- ❖ Famine and hunger also led to massive loss of lives which reduced the population of the kingdom.

❖ Diseases and natural calamities like floods also led to the decline of the kingdom.

2. BUGANDA KINGDOM

Origins

- Buganda is one of the numerous Kingdoms that sprung up after the collapse of the Chwezi dynasty.
- A number of theories have been put forward to explain the origins of Buganda.
- According to oral traditions in Buganda, Kintu was the first Muganda believed to have come from the direction of Mt. Elgon (Kintu came from the East).
- He is said to have come with 13 or 14 of the present day clans in Buganda.
- According to traditions in Bunyoro, the founder of Buganda was Prince Kato Kimera who was a twin brother to Prince Isingoma Rukidi Mpuga the founder of the Bito dynasty in Bunyoro.
- He is said to have come with 5 or 6 of the present day clans in Buganda.
- Other traditions claim that Buganda originated from the Bantu clans that migrated from Congo basin.

- Buganda sprung up after the collapse of the Chwezi Empire with only three countries i.e. Kyadondo, Mawokota and Busiro.
- In the 17th century, Kabaka Kateregga began her systematic expansion by annexing Gomba, Singo, Butambala and Kyaggwe.
- Around the 18th century (1750) many immigrants arrived from Bunyoro, Mt.Elgon area and Ssese Islands to increase her population.
- Between 1780 – 1789 (18th century), Kabaka Jjunju waged war against Bunyoro and managed to annex Buddu and Kooki which were rich in Iron.
- Between 1814 and 1881 Kabaka Ssekamanya annexed Buwekula and Bwera and added them to Buganda.
- Between 1831 – 1851, Kabaka Ssuna finally attacked Bunyoro and crashed it.
- Still in the same period, Kabaka Mawanda tried to annex Busoga but failed in his attempt not until Kabaka Kyabaggu's reign that Busoga was finally crashed.

- In the late 19th century Buruuli, Mawogola, Bulemezi and Bugerere were annexed to Buganda as Bunyoro was declining.
- In the 1900 Buganda agreement, Buganda was given the two lost counties of Buyaga and Bugangaizi.
- This stretched her territory from Lake Albert in the west to River Nile in the East up to Northern Tanzania in the South.

FACTORS FOR THE GROWTH AND EXPANSION OF BUGANDA

❖ Buganda started as a very small state which made it easy to defend and administer effectively.

❖ Buganda was gifted with fertile soils and good climate which ensured production of Matooke to feed her big population.

❖ Buganda established trade links with the coastal Arabs and was able to obtain guns that helped her to expand.

❖ Buganda had well developed roads that connected the whole Kingdom which eased the movements of people and their goods.

- ❖ Buganda had a highly centralized system of administration which ensured stability in the Kingdom.
- ❖ Buganda had strong and capable leaders, e.g. Kabaka Ssuna, Kabaka Jjunju, Kabaka Ssekamanya .e.t.c who expanded the Kingdom to greater heights.
- ❖ The Kabaka married from all the major tribes of Buganda which created unity and loyalty of the people.
- ❖ Buganda took advantage of her weak neighbours to expand e.g. Bunyoro lost a lot of land to Buganda.
- ❖ The Kiganda society had division of Labour where by women engaged in agriculture while the men concentrated on trading, fishing and fighting to defend the empire.
- ❖ The geographical location of Buganda also gave her a security advantage e.g. Lake Victoria in the south, river Nile in the East and Lake Kyoga in the North provided natural defense barriers against enemies.
- ❖ Buganda also absorbed / conquered small communities which led to increase of her population.
- ❖ The coming of the British also led to the expansion of Buganda because they offered her enough support in defeating Bunyoro.

- ❖ The constant supply of tributes from conquered states also strengthened Buganda's economy e.g from Busoga.
- ❖ Buganda had a royal guard where by all able bodied men were supposed to go for compulsory military training so that they could defend the Kingdom.

STRUCTURE OF BUGANDA KINGDOM

Political organisation

- ❖ Buganda had a highly centralized system of administration.
- ❖ The Kabaka was the head of the Kingdom with absolute powers e.g. Kabaka could appoint, promote, demote and dismiss his chiefs.
- ❖ The Kabaka's powers were hereditary and leadership was passed on to his elder son.
- ❖ The Kabaka was assisted by 3 prominent chiefs i.e. Chief Justice (Omulamuzi), Treasurer (Omuwanika) and the Prime minister (Katikiro).
- ❖ The Kingdom was subdivided into counties (Ssazas), sub-counties (Gombolola), parish (Muluka), sub-parish (Ekitongole) and village (Kyalo).

- ❖ Each of these was led by a chief for effective administration.
- ❖ The Chiefs were supposed to mobilize people for public works e.g. construction of roads.
- ❖ Buganda had a legislative council called Lukiiko (parliament) which was to formulate laws and advise the Kabaka.
- ❖ The Kabaka had royal body guards called Abambowa and these were charged with protecting the Kabaka at his palace and on journeys and functions.
- ❖ The Kabaka received gifts from his subjects and chiefs as a sign of loyalty and in return they would be rewarded with large chunks of land.

Social Organization

- ❖ Socially, Buganda was organized on clan basis.
- ❖ Every Muganda belonged to a particular clan e.g. Lion (Mpologoma) Monkey (Enkima) Buffalo (Mbogo).
- ❖ Marriage in Buganda was Polygamous.
- ❖ Members of the same clan were not allowed to get married.
- ❖ Each of the clans had a clan head (Omukulu we Kiika) and a special area of origin (Obutaka).

- ❖ Kabaka was the head of all clans (Ssabataka) and belonged to the clan of his mother.
- ❖ The Baganda were divided into classes i.e. royal class for men (Abalangira) Women (Abambejja), Nobles (Abakungu), Peasants/ Commoners (Abakopi) and slaves (Abaddu).
- ❖ The Kabaka was the spiritual leader of Buganda and was considered semi-divine.
- ❖ The Baganda believed in small gods (Lubaale) whom they consulted on various occasions e.g. Ddungu (hunting), Musoke (rain), Mukasa (fishing), and Walumbe (death) e.t.c
- ❖ The Baganda also believed in witchcraft and sorcerers (Abalogo) who were consulted by those who wanted to harm others.
- ❖ The Baganda had a royal regalia which included, drums, backcloth, spears which were highly respected.
- ❖ Virginity was highly respected in Buganda because it was a sign of good upbringing and respect.

Economic organisation

- ❖ The Baganda carried out agriculture as the major activity and grew crops like Matooke, Cassava, Yams and beans.
- ❖ They also domesticated / kept animals like, cows, sheep, goats, chicken, and rabbits e.t.c
- ❖ Fishing was also carried out on the shores of Lake Victoria.
- ❖ Iron working was also practiced and they made implements such as knives, pangas and spears.
- ❖ The back cloth making industry was also developed in Buganda.
- ❖ The Buganda also participated in the long distance trade with the coastal Arabs mainly acquiring guns in exchange for slaves and Ivory.
- ❖ Buganda also received tributes from her vessel states to supplement on her revenue e.g. from Busoga and Toro.
- ❖ Taxation was another source of revenue and it was the duty of chiefs to collect taxes.
- ❖ Raids were also important in Buganda's economy e.g. she raided Bunyoro, Busoga for cattle, slaves, Ivory e.t.c.

Reasons for Buganda's decline

- ❖ The Kingdom was too big to be effectively administered.
- ❖ Lack of able leadership especially after the death of Kabaka Muteesa 1 in 1884.
- ❖ Attacks from vassal states e.g. Busoga greatly weakened the kingdom.
- ❖ Land conflicts with Bunyoro also increased hostilities with her neighbours.
- ❖ Internal conflicts especially power struggles led to disunity in the kingdom.
- ❖ Disunity because of social classes also weakened her military strength.
- ❖ Natural calamities e.g. floods and diseases especially sleeping sickness which killed many people.
- ❖ The coming of Missionaries also led to disunity within the kingdom hence her decline.
- ❖ The coming of colonialists who effectively led to the loss of her independence.

3. ANKOLE KINGDOM

ORIGINS

- Ankole was one of the Kingdoms that made up after the decline of Bunyoro- Kitara.
- Traditions in Western Uganda claim that Rukidi Mpuga a son to Wamara was the founder of Ankole Kingdom.
- The Kingdom was established in the South Western part of Buganda around the 15th century.
- Initially, Ankole was called "Karo Karungi" meaning peaceful land or 'Land of Milk'.
- Ankole remained a small Kingdom around the 18th century and Ankole produced a number of ambitious Kings who extended her boundaries.

Political organisation

- ❖ Ankole had a centralized system of administration.
- ❖ Omugabe was the political head of the kingdom.
- ❖ The Omugabe's position was hereditary with absolute powers.
- ❖ The Omugabe, Queen mother, Princes and princesses formed the royal family and resided in the royal palace.
- ❖ The Omugabe was assisted by the Nganzi (Prime minister) who was the most important of all chiefs.

- ❖ Ankole was divided into 10 districts each headed by Omukungu (chief).
- ❖ Some of the districts included Mbarara, Ibanda, Nyabushozi, Bunyaruguru and Kashari.
- ❖ The Omugabe and Nganzi came from the upper class of the Hima and always kept large herds of cattle and estates.
- ❖ The Abakungu also kept cattle and were in charge of keeping peace and sending beer and millet to the royal palace.
- ❖ Ankole had royal regalia that included spears, a crown and the royal drum. (Bagyendanwa).
- ❖ Ankole also had a “royal fire” that was never allowed to go out until the reigning Omugabe died.
- ❖ Ankole had no standing army but in case of war, all able bodied men were supposed to gather at the Omugabe’s palace with spears, bows, arrows and shields.

Social organisation

- ❖ Ankole society was divided into two distinct classes i.e. Hima and Iru.

- ❖ Bahima who were the rulers and pastoralists and Bairu who were the peasants and subject class.
- ❖ Marriage between the Bairu and the Bahima was considered a social disgrace and was highly discouraged.
- ❖ Religiously, the Banyankole believed in a supreme being called Ruhanga who was thought to be the creator of the world.
- ❖ No prayer and sacrifices were offered to Ruhanga because they believe there was no need of bothering him after bringing them into the world.
- ❖ Below Ruhanga were other lesser goods e.g. kagoro, kazoba, Omusisi e.t.c to whom prayers and sacrifices were offered.
- ❖ The Banyankole highly respected spirits of the dead and sacrifices e.g. beer and milk were offered to them at family shrines.
- ❖ Owning cattle was a sign of prestige and those with few cows were always despised.
- ❖ The Banyankole were united by a similar culture, Runyankole language and same way of dressing e.g. Omushanana.

Economic organisation

- ❖ Pastoralism was the main occupation of the Banyankole and they kept long horned cattle mainly dominated by the Bahima.
- ❖ The Bairu also carried out cultivation and mainly grew millet.
- ❖ Blacksmithing was another activity of the Banyankole and they made spears, hoes and arrows.
- ❖ Trade was also carried out and they exchanged commodities like ivory with their neighbours and with coastal Arabs.
- ❖ Carpentry was also carried out by the Banyankole and they made very beautiful wooden pots, dishes and other items.

4. KARAGWE KINGDOM

Origins

- Karagwe kingdom extended between Rwanda and Burundi, Lake Victoria and the North western part of Tanganyika.
- The settlers in this area were Bantu who carried out farming and grew crops like millet, sorghum.

- They had come from the south west around the 15th and 16th century.
- However the Bantu are said to have stayed in this region for 43 centuries before migrating north East to Bunyoro and Toro.
- Later a section of these returned to Karagwe after the Luo invasion.
- By the time of their return, they had combined with the Chwezi.
- They reached Karagwe around the 16th century and set up the Hinda dynasty.

ESTABLISHMENT OF RUHINDA'S RULE IN KARAGWE

- After the Luo invasion, Ruhinda led his Chwezi immigrants from Bunyoro - Kitara to Karagwe.
- He deposed over the local leader known as **Nano** and he set up the Hinda dynasty.
- He established his rule in Karagwe and built his capital at Bwehangwe.
- He then sent his sons with royal regalia like spears to establish Hinda dynasty in all the surrounding areas.

- This gave rise to small sub dynasties under his sons.
- These sub dynasties included: Gisaka, Kyamtwara, Ihangiro, Buzinza, Busubi, Ukerewe and Nasa.
- The creation of several independent Hinda sub dynasties by Ruhinda's sons created rivalries and these weakened the Hinda rule in Karagwe.
- These small Kingdoms were not directly under the authority of Ruhinda.
- When he died they became independent.

Political organisation

❖ Ruhinda introduced a centralized system of government.

❖ The centralized system replaced the clan system headed clan leaders called Muharambwa.

❖ Upon the death of Ruhinda; many areas that made up his Kingdom declared themselves independent.

❖ Ruhinda used the clans for efficient administration. These clans were not destroyed by the Chwezi immigrants.

- The clan leaders (Muharambwa) were charged with a collection of taxes, tribute and were also in charge of religious rights.
- The clans were grouped into eight bigger units for easy administration.
- The units included Kianja, Bukara, Kyamtwara, Kiziba, Ihangiro, Misenyi, Bugabo and Karagwe.
- Each of these chiefdoms became a nation called Ihanga and chiefs would dismiss a clan head if his people appealed.
- The clan heads had political, religious and judicial powers. These were supposed to head clan courts that settled disputes.
- Age sets were encouraged among the Banyambo and young boys of the same age were called at the chief's residence where they would be trained in military art.
- After military training, they would be sent home and only recalled in times of military emergency.
- The few, who were outstanding and very skillful, were sent to the king's court where they learnt correct court manners and language.

ECONOMIC ORGANISATION

- ❖ They were mainly agriculturalists and they grew crops like sorghum, millet and bananas.
- ❖ They also kept the long horned cattle.
- ❖ Iron working was another economic activity and tools which were made included hoes, spears and arrows which were used in agriculture and defense.
- ❖ The people of Karagwe also carried out trade.
- ❖ They exchanged trade items like Ivory, and iron products with Buganda and coastal traders.

SOCIAL ORGANISATION

- ❖ The people of Karagwe believed in ancestral spirits.
- ❖ The Muharambwa was supposed to lead over religious functions.
- ❖ A Caste system (class systems) existed in Karagwe Kingdom with the pastoralists as rulers and farmers as the subjects.
- ❖ Settlement of conflicts was entrusted to the clan leader (Muharambwa) but the head of the chiefdom (Ihanga) was the final man in everything.

Revision questions

1. a) Who were the Chwezi/Bachwezi? **OR** What were the origins of the Bachwezi/Chwezi?

b) Explain their importance in the history of East Africa. **OR** Why are they still remembered in the history of East Africa?

2. a) What were the origins of Bunyoro-Kitara Empire/kingdom?

b) How was the empire organized by 1350 A.D? OR Describe the political, social and economic organization of Bunyoro-Kitara Empire by 1350.

3. a) What is the importance of the Bachwezi/Chwezi in the history of East Africa?

b) Why did their empire collapse/decline? **OR** What led to the eventual **collapse/downfall** of their empire?

4. a) What were the origins of Bunyoro Kingdom?

b) Describe the organization of Bunyoro kingdom before the coming of Europeans.

5. a) Describe the political, social and economic organization of Bunyoro kingdom before 1850.

b) How did Kabalega try to rebuild Bunyoro kingdom?

6. a) Describe the career and achievements of Kabalega for the kingdom of Bunyoro.
   b) What led to the decline of his empire after 1890? **OR** What led to the eventual collapse/downfall of Bunyoro kingdom?

7. a) Describe the origins of Buganda kingdom.
   b) What factors led to her growth and expansion up to 1850?

8. a) Describe the rise and expansion of Buganda kingdom up to 1850.
   b) Why did it become so powerful during this period?

9. a) Describe the political, social and economic organization of Buganda kingdom before 1850.
   b) Why did the kingdom start collapsing after 1850?

10. a) How did Ruhinda establish his rule over Karagwe? **OR** How was the Hinda dynasty established?
    b) What changes did Ruhinda introduce?

11. a) Describe the origins of Ankole kingdom.
    b) Describe the political, social and economic organization of Ankole by 1850.

PRE – COLONIAL SOCIETIES IN EAST AFRICA

NYAMWEZI

ORIGINS

- The Nyamwezi are Bantu speaking who belong to the central and Northern Tanzania Bantu.
- They are closely related to other tribes such as Sukuma.
- They are an example of a de-centralized society.
- They had fairly organized political, social and economic features.
- They first settled in central Tanzania around Tabora between 1000—1500 AD.
- They migrated from the Congo basin and entered Tanganyika through the western part.
- They used the route between Lake Tanganyika and Lake Edward.
- The name Nyamwezi means people from the moon.

- It was given to them by the coastal traders who saw them coming from the direction of the new moon (west).
- Originally, they lived in small chiefdoms bound together by ethnic association.
- During the 19th century, they developed centralized administration during the reigns of Mirambo and Nyungu Ya Mawe.

The structure of the Nyamwezi

Political organisation

- ❖ The Nyamwezi lived in small independent chiefdoms of about 1,000 people.
- ❖ They were united together by ethnic clan ties.
- ❖ The Nyamwezi had a decentralized system of administration.
- ❖ Each chiefdom headed by a chief with the title **Ntemi.**
- ❖ The position of the Ntemi was hereditary i.e. his son / close relative succeeded him upon his death.
- ❖ The Ntemi had political powers and was in charge of law and order in his chiefdom.

- In case of population explosion in one chiefdom or succession disputes, splits were done and a new chiefdom would be created.
- The Ntemi was assisted by a council of elders called **Wanyampala.**
- **Wanyampala** comprised of old, experienced and knowledgeable elders.
- Chiefdoms were further split into small political units headed by clan heads called **Gunguli**.
- Other important chiefs among the Nyamwezi included ritual officer (**Mgawe**), Army commander **(Mtwale**) information officer (**Kikoma**) Tax /revenue officer (**Minule**).
- All these took orders from the Ntemi.
- Each chiefdom had an army with a commander appointed by the Ntemi.
- Before going for any battle, the Ntemi had to bless the army.
- The Nyamwezi copied the royal regalia from neighbouring societies such as Bunyoro.

Social Organization

- ❖ The Ntemi was the religious leader of his people and linked them to their ancestors.
- ❖ The Ntemi was the fountain of the society and received a lot of respect from his people.
- ❖ The Ntemi could marry as many wives as he wanted.
- ❖ Upon the death of the Ntemi, his body would be buried upright with beer, food and weapons.
- ❖ The Nyamwezi also believed in life after death and the spirits of the dead.
- ❖ Ntemi would always preside over sacrifices to ancestors on behalf of his people.
- ❖ The Ntemi was supposed to stop any calamity that would hit his people, their fields and animals.

Economic Organisation

- ❖ The Nyamwezi were farmers and mainly grew cereals e.g. millet and sorghum.
- ❖ The Ntemi always mobilized his people to grow enough food, settle land disputes and guard against misuse of land.
- ❖ The Nyamwezi also kept animals for example goats and cattle.

- The Ntemi and his chiefs always kept large herds of animals.
- Tax collection was also part of their economy and the Nyamwezi always collected food as tax.
- The Nyamwezi had established food granaries which were directly under the Ntemi.
- These were used to feed his body guards, members of his palace and other people in case of hunger and famine.
- The Nyamwezi also carried out some fishing to supplement their diet.
- The Nyamwezi locally traded with their neighbours e.g. the Vinza for salt and Zinza for Iron.
- The Nyamwezi also participated in the long distance trade with the coastal Arabs.
- They controlled the central trade route and provided slaves, bee wax, Ivory.
- In return they got guns , beads and clothes .
- Raiding on their neighbours was also a major economic activity carried out by the Nyamwezi.

Mirambo's Empire

- Mirambo was born around the 1830s in Nyamwezi land to one Ntemi chief.
- He spent his early years in Bugomba where he had been captured by the Ngoni.
- He mastered the Ngoni tactics of warfare and used them to build a strong army of the Ruga Ruga.
- It was this army that helped Mirambo to build a big empire.
- Mirambo attacked the Vinza, Sukuma and Iramba to extend his influence.
- By 1876, Mirambo established his capital at Urambo.
- His empire extended Northwards and Eastwards to control the central caravan trade route from Tabora to Karagwe, Ujiji, Buganda and Bunyoro.

Why Mirambo was able to build such a big empire

❖ Mirambo was a person of boundless courage and energy which he used to build his empire.

❖ He personally led his army in battle which encouraged and gave morale to his army to fight on.

- ❖ Mirambo spent a lot of years in Bugomba as a captive of the Ngoni which helped him to master the ngoni military tactics.
- ❖ He used the ngoni military tactics to build a strong army called Ruga-Ruga that was very instrumental in his rise to prominence.
- ❖ He absorbed the conquered people, recruited the youth into his army to boost his fighting force.
- ❖ Mirambo was a man of high determination who took no nonsense from any one. E.g. he insisted on homage and tributes from foreigners passing through his territory.
- ❖ The acquiring of guns and gun power from the coastal Arabs helped Mirambo to extend his empire wide.
- ❖ Mirambo highly paid the Ruga –Ruga who helped him to build such a big empire.
- ❖ Mirambo's empire was strategically located in central Tanganyika which made it the center of trade.
- ❖ Mirambo exploited the weaknesses of his neighbours like Vinza, Zinza, Sukuma, Ha and Samba to acquire territories from them.

- ❖ The Nyamwezi lived in small chiefdoms that were weak and disorganized and this made it easy for Mirambo to conquer them.
- ❖ Mirambo was also far –sighted and an ambitious man who knew what he wanted and always looked for a way of getting it.
- ❖ Trade also helped Mirambo extend his power and influence because it brought in revenue or taxes e.g. He controlled two trade routes, one to Ujiji and the second one to Bunyoro and Buganda.
- ❖ Mirambo also established diplomatic ties with many Europeans, Arabs e.g. He invited missionaries to come to his area.
- ❖ Mirambo also made friendly relations with many African chiefs. He tried to establish diplomatic ties with Muteesa 1 of Buganda, sultan of Zanzibar and Tippu Tip.
- ❖ Mirambo equally respected foreigners/strangers passing through his land. This brought in many visitors that he benefited from in terms of skills and trade.

The collapse of Mirambo's empire

- ❖ The death of Mirambo led to collapse of the empire because it lacked a strong foundation.
- ❖ The empire was built around Mirambo's personality and without him it was bound to collapse.
- ❖ Mirambo's successor Mpandashalo was too weak and could not keep the empire intact.
- ❖ The empire was too big to be ruled effectively by one person.
- ❖ Mirambo always found it hard to enforce law and order from his subjects due to the vast size.
- ❖ Unity was also lacking i.e. Mirambo had left the various areas he had conquered under their traditional rulers and upon his death many of them declared themselves independent.
- ❖ Mirambo's neighbours were not happy about his success e.g. the Sukuma and this encouraged various states under him to rebel.
- ❖ Mirambo's army of the Ruga-Ruga was not dependable and became a menace after his death e.g. looting and burning people's property.
- ❖ The confusion created by the Ruga Ruga forced the Germans to occupy Tanganyika in 1885.

- ❖ The decline of the Long distance trade and abolition of slave trade also led to the collapse of his empire.
- ❖ Mirambo lost contact with the Arabs who used to supply him guns and gunpowder.
- ❖ Mirambo's chiefs were weak since many were appointed just because they belonged to the ruling class. They did not merit their positions which further weakened Mirambo's empire.
- ❖ Increasing Europeans interests in E.A finally brought Mirambo's empire to an end in 1885.
- ❖ The Germans came under the excuse of abolishing slave trade and stop the Ruga- Ruga and they stamped their authority in Tanganyika.

NYUNGU YA MAWE'S empire

- Nyungu ya mawe was born in Unyanyembe near Tabora among the Nyamwezi.
- He was a prince from the royal family of Unyanyembe.
- Nyungu ya mawe was a praise name meaning 'Pot of stone' (the pot that never breaks).
- Nyungu ya mawe was also able to build a big empire using the services of Ruga Ruga mercenaries.

- He also employed the Ngoni fighting methods.

❖ In 1874, he abandoned his people and formed his capital at kiwele.

❖ He attacked the Kimbu in the East and also captured the trade route between Tabora and Ufipa.

❖ Nyungu ya mawe was a brave and ruthless military strategist.

❖ He could not hesitate to risk the lives of his soldiers and he referred to them as **Mapimpiti** meaning Logs, to achieve his targets.

❖ Nyungu ya mawe also created a centralized system of administration.

❖ All conquered areas were given new chiefs called Vitwale (plural) or Mtwale (singular).

❖ He divided his empire into six provinces each under a Mtwale directly appointed by him.

❖ The Vitwale were directly appointed by Nyungu ya mawe and were his eyes and ears. In most cases they were his relatives.

❖ Nyungu ya mawe created a highly disciplined army.

❖ His army underwent physical and psychological training and didn't lose morale after his death.

- ❖ Nyungu ya mawe did not bother establishing good relations with Europeans.
- ❖ He heavily taxed them which displeased them.
- ❖ In December 1884, Nyungu ya mawe died as a one eyed man.
- ❖ He was succeeded by his daughter Mgalula who ruled successfully until 1893.
- ❖ When she died, her daughter took over and ruled until the Germans captured her capital at Kiwele and conquered it.
- ❖ This marked the end of Nyungu ya Mawe's empire.
- ❖ The Germans replaced the Vitwale with new chiefs called Akidas.
- ❖ The Germans later introduced direct rule.

THE KIKUYU SOCIETY

Origins

- These were Bantu speaking people under the Eastern Bantu group.
- They are also known as the highland Bantu.
- They first settled in areas around Kenyan highlands near Nyeri, Kiambu and Fort Hall.
- Their origin is based on myths and legends.

- Kikuyu traditions claim that their god (Mumbere) had three sons i.e. Gikuyu, Kamba and Maasai.
- He asked them to choose between a bow, a digging stick, and a spear.
- Gikuyu fell for a digging stick, Kamba for a bow and Maasai for a spear.
- Gikuyu and his wife Mumbi had nine daughters.
- It's these nine daughters who gave rise to the present 9 Kikuyu clans.

STRUCTURE OF THE KIKUYU

Political Organization

❖ The Kikuyu had a decentralized system of administration.

❖ Their political system was based on clans with each handling its own affairs.

❖ Each clan was made up of age groups called **Riika**.

❖ These were further sub-divided into age sets each having its own name marking a particular event.

❖ The Kikuyu had an army and the commander represented them on council of elders called Kiama.

❖ This army composed of Junior and senior warriors.

- Junior warriors were supposed to clear gardens for planting, defend the village against attack and construct houses and fences.
- Families sharing the same terrace made up a territorial unit called **Mbari.**
- Each Mbari was under a council of elders headed by **Muramiti**.
- The position of the Muramiti was not hereditary but was entrusted to any experienced elder.
- The Muramiti performed judicial functions.
- Members of the council of elders must have paid some goats and beer and must have circumcised the elder son of their houses to qualify.

Social Organization

- Religiously, the Kikuyu believed in a supreme god called Ngai.
- Ngai who manifested himself through the sun, moon, rainbow, thunder and lightning.
- Kirinyaga (Mt Kenya) was believed to be Ngai's home.
- Shrines were built around the slopes of Mt Kenya.

- Ngai could only be approached by community elders as a group but not as individuals.
- Ngai was consulted at all stages of life e.g. at birth, marriage and death.
- The Kikuyu highly respected the spirits of the ancestors whom they believed to possess powers to punish and bless.
- Therefore sacrifices were offered to appease the spirits of ancestors.
- The Kikuyu society was also organized on clan basis and each clan was made up of age groups.
- Riika was further sub-divided into age sets and initiation from one age set to another was after circumcision done on both boys and girls after every five years.
- Inheritance of property always followed the mother's line (matrilineal).
- Land and children were all owned by the mother.

Economic Organization

- Agriculture was their main activity and they mainly grew cereals like Sorghum, Maize and Peas.
- Land was highly respected by the Kikuyu.

- A man with no land was not allowed to marry because his wife could not feed the family without it.
- On top of agriculture, the Kikuyu herded cattle, goats, sheep and kept bees.
- Fishing and rearing of fowls like chicken was a taboo among the Kikuyu i.e. their social laws did not permit the consumption of fish and fowls.
- Division of labour existed among the Kikuyu.
- Men cleared the land, herded and milked animals as women planted and harvested crops and looked after the homes.
- The Kikuyu traded with their neighbours like the Masai, Embu, Pokomo, and Kamba for products like milk and butter.
- With the development of LDT the Kikuyu supplied Ivory, Slaves, Bee wax, and Skins e.t.c to the coastal Arab traders.
- The Kikuyu also hunted wild animals and gathered fruits from the forests around the Kenyan highland.
- The Kikuyu also carried out Iron working and made Iron implements like hoes for agriculture and spears for hunting.

THE ITESO SOCIETY

Origins

- They are a branch of the plain Nilotics called the Jie.
- They migrated from southern Ethiopia.
- They fall under a smaller group of the Ateker.
- They are related to the Turkana, Kumam, Maasai and Karamojong.
- They first settled in Karamoja for some time and lived there for some time.
- In the early 18th century, the Iteso left Karamoja.
- This was due to cattle rustling, over stocking, over population and lack of water and pasture.
- They then moved southwards and settled along the shores of Lake Bisina.
- It is from here that they acquired the name Itesots.
- Due to more pressure, others moved to Eastern Uganda and Western Kenya.
- They are settled in districts such as Kumi, Soroti, Tororo, Mbale, Kaberamaido and Amuria.

Structure of the Teso Society

Political Organization

- The Itesots had no centralized system of government.
- They were organized in clans called Ateker.
- The clans were the centres of power and it was made up of several extended families.
- Each clan had a common taboo.
- The Emuron was the most important chief among the Itesots.
- He had religious and Political powers, a rain maker and also helped barren women to conceive.
- Other important chiefs included Aruwon (military leader) who was chosen because of his bravery and Ekaraban (Village ambassador) who settled disputes.
- Clan meetings (Etems) were important among the Iteso because they handled cases like divorce, adultery and murder.
- Age- Set system (Aturi) existed among the Itesots on which wars and raids were conducted.
- Boys of the same age worked and fought together.

Social Organization

- ❖ Social ceremonies were very important e.g. Marriage and birth of twins were marked with jubilations, dances, food and beer.
- ❖ Religiously, the Itesots believed in a supreme being who had lesser gods for example Apa – the god of peace and Edeke – the god of calamity.
- ❖ The Emuron was the religious leader and always offered sacrifices to Edeke on behalf of his people.
- ❖ The Iteso were bound together by strong ties of Kinship and members of the same ancestry regarded themselves as brothers.
- ❖ Itesots had an age-set system (Aturi) which was always formed at a time of Initiations and it marked a change from child hood to adult hood.
- ❖ A man was the head of the family and therefore his sons were supposed to inherit the father's property upon his death.
- ❖ Status among the Iteso depended on how many cows one had i.e. those who less herds were always despised and minimized.

Economic Organization

- ❖ Initially, the Iteso were pastoralists and they kept cows, sheep and goats.
- ❖ They also reared birds e.g. chicken and turkey.
- ❖ The Iteso later adopted farming and they grew crops such as millet, sorghum and Groundnuts.
- ❖ Hunting was another activity among the Iteso and this promoted unity and socialization.
- ❖ The Iteso also carried out some trade and they exchanged hides and skins and Ivory for backcloth, beads and iron implements from Bunyoro and Busoga.

THE CHAGGA

Origins

- They are Bantu speaking people who belonged to the Highland and coastal Bantu.
- They comprise of that group of Central and Northern Tanzania Bantu that continued with their migration from the Congo basin.
- They are closely related to other Bantu tribes like Gweno, Sukuma and Shamba.
- They entered Tanzania through the West using the route between Lake Tanganyika and Lake Edward.

- Their migration took place between 1000 – 1300 AD
- They settled around Mt. Kilimanjaro in Northern Tanganyika.
- The Chagga decided to settle around Mt. Kilimanjaro permanently and came to be known as the highland Bantu.

Political organisation

- The Chagga had a decentralized system of administration with chiefs at the centers of authority.
- The chiefs were distinguished elders in society with political and religious powers.
- Chiefs were always encouraged to extend the political frontiers of their chiefdoms.
- Chiefs were also in charge of administering justice in their chiefdoms.
- The Chagga had political rivalries with their neighbours especially the Masai over grazing lands.
- Below the chiefs were other influential leaders called judicial counselors.
- Judicial counselors were directly appointed by the chiefs.

- Judicial counselors were also charged with tax collection.
- Below the judicial counselors were the clan heads who were prominent and influential.
- Clan heads were also used in maintenance of law and order in their clans.

Social organisation

- The Chagga were organized on clan basis.
- They had several clans with each clan having a clan head.
- Chiefs also served as chief priests and presided over religious ceremonies.
- They believed in a god called Ruwa.
- Ruwa was considered not to have been the creator of the world.
- Ruwa was believed to have freed mankind and provided him with fruits and plants to feed on.
- They believed in the powers of ancestors i.e. life after death.
- Sacrifices were therefore offered to appease the spirits of the ancestors.

Economic organisation

- ✓ Agriculture was the important economic activity among the Chagga.
- ✓ They grew crops such as bananas, millet and coffee.
- ✓ Irrigation was carried out to support agriculture during the dry season.
- ✓ They applied manure in their farms and also carried out crop rotation.
- ✓ They also kept animals like cattle, goats and sheep.
- ✓ They also practiced iron working and made implements like spears, pangas and arrows.
- ✓ They carried out trade with their neighbours and exchanged their surplus goods for salt.
- ✓ They later participated in the long distance trade with the coastal Arabs.

N.B By the 18th century, they had developed a system of kingship.

THE GALLA

Origins

- The Galla are of Cushitic origin.
- They are a branch of the plain Nilotics who migrated from southern Ethiopia.

- They are thought to have originated from Ethiopia then moved to Somalia and finally entered East Africa.
- They are a nomadic pastoral tribe that occupies the Eastern parts of Kenya.

Political organisation

- The Galla traditional structure was connected to the age set system based on ten groups.
- Every male belonged to a single group throughout his life.
- Each age set was headed by a leader called Abba-Boku for 8 years.
- Abba-Boku presided over meetings and formulated laws governing his age set.
- Abba-Boku was seen as a ritual and natural affairs expert.
- Abba-Boku was assisted by 3 other elders all from distinguished families.
- From the age of ten, boys were supposed to train as warriors.
- The Galla thus became a fierce warrior society respected over a wide area.
- They carried spears and shields into the battle fields.

- Each age group came up for promotion every eight years and when this happened, its leader had to take his people to a new territory.
- This would eventually lead to the expansion of the Galla territory.

Social organisation

- The Galla believed in a supreme being called Waqa.
- Waqa was believed to be the controller of everyone's destiny.
- He always granted favours and protection especially in times of battle.
- There existed both good and bad spirits living in lakes, rivers, mountains and trees.
- Later on, some became Muslims due to interaction with the Muslims from Ethiopia.
- They had the age set system where every male belonged to a particular group throughout his life.
- Hunting of animals was carried out as a test of manhood.

Economic organisation

- ✓ They were a pastoral society who moved from place to place in search of water and pasture.
- ✓ They kept animals such as cattle, goats, sheep, camels and donkeys.
- ✓ Their constant movements in search of water and pastures brought them into conflicts with other tribes like the Masai and Somali.
- ✓ They carried out small scale agriculture and grew grains, peas, beans, vegetables and pepper.
- ✓ Limited fishing and hunting were also carried out.
- ✓ Traded with their neighbours like the Somali, Ethiopians and Swahili Arabs.

THE MASAI

Origins

- They fall under the pastoral group of the plain Nilotics.
- They moved from the area West of Lake Turkana around the 17th century.
- They existed in two groups i.e. the Kwavi and Purko Masai.
- They occupy the area called Machakos in southern Kenya and some are found in Northern Tanzania.

Political organisation

- They were a decentralized society with no central authority.
- They were divided into sixteen independent clans.
- The clans were the basis of their political organisation.
- Each clan had its own territory, cattle brand, pasture and water supply.
- Leadership was exercised through the age set system.
- Age sets were linear and their names were unique and never repeated.
- The most active age set was Moran comprised of junior warriors.
- It was led by a military captain called Olaiguanani.
- Once elected, the Olaiguanani was presented with a ceremonial club Oriakha to symbolize his new status.
- He organized cattle raids and arranged the distribution of the war booty.
- A successful raid was a sign of social success and prestige.
- The elders in society administered the clans and maintained law and order.

- From the mid 19th century, Laibon became the center of political power.
- A young man became a member after circumcision performed at 18 years.
- After initiation, the boys became junior warriors called illmuran.
- The illmuran lived separately in manyattas where they were drilled in military techniques.
- From junior warriors, they progressed to senior warriors and finally senior elders.

Social organisation

- The Masai believed in a supreme creator called Enkai.
- Enkai was the source of life and punished bad people.
- The Laibon prayed to the Enkai on behalf of his people.
- Senior elders helped organize society especially during difficult periods.
- Women and children were the lowest members of the society.
- The junior warriors (Moran) were charged with defending the homesteads.
- They conducted raids and surveyed areas for grazing.

- Women were also initiated every year.
- They built temporary structures called Manyattas because they are always on the move.

Economic organisation

- ✓ The Purko Masai were pastoralists who kept cattle, goats and sheep.
- ✓ The Kwavi Masai were cultivators who grew crops like finger millet and sorghum.
- ✓ They traded with other communities like the Kikuyu and exchanged their hides and skins for beans, tobacco, sugarcane and millet.
- ✓ Women did the marketing of goods.
- ✓ There were established markets where goods would be exchanged.
- ✓ Iron working was carried out and they made spears, arrows and ornaments.
- ✓ They carried out raids and hunting.
- ✓ Practiced small scale fishing to supplement their diet.
- ✓ Art and craft was also practiced and they made jars and bowls.

THE 19TH CENTURY MASAI CIVIL WARS

- These were a series of wars that were fought between the Kwavi and Purko Masai.
- The Kwavi were agriculturalists while the Purko were predominantly pastoralists.
- The wars were fought in two separate intervals i.e. in 1815 and in 1840.
- The first major war took place in 1815 in the Uasin-Gishu plateau which ended in the defeat of the Kwavi Masai.
- In 1840, the Kwavi reorganized themselves with the help of the Laikipia and they drove the Purko Masai out of the rift valley.
- Between 1870 and 1875, the Purko decisively attacked and defeated the Kwavi killing many of them.

Causes of the Masai civil wars

- The Purko who were the pastoral Masai always despised the Kwavi who were farmers leading to the wars.
- The Purko claimed that the Kwavi were finishing their land and that very soon they would not have enough grazing lands for their animals.

- The Kwavi farmers also claimed that animals of the Purko were destroying their farms during grazing leading to the wars.
- The Kwavi always expected help from their neighbours the Laikipia and this gave them morale to fight against the Purko.
- The succession disputes between the leaders of the Masai after the death of Laibon Mbatien also led to the outbreak of the wars.
- The Kwavi Masai had always defeated the Purko who had for long wanted revenge for their losses.
- The Purko were always a proud society who took a lot of pride in fighting and when they got the opportunity, they had to engage the Kwavi in warfare.
- The two groups had participated in long distance trade and had acquired guns which encouraged them to fight against each other.
- The Purko always believed that the Kwavi had deliberately spread animal diseases which claiming many their animals' lives.
- The youths among the Kwavi were always blamed for stealing the animals that belonged to the Purko which led to the wars.

- The Purko believed that they were the rightful owners of all the Masai land and didn't want it to be taken over by the Kwavi.
- The desire to control the trading activities in the area also led to conflicts between the two groups.

Effects of the Masai civil wars

- Many people died during the course of the wars.
- A lot of property was destroyed during the wars e.g. farms and homesteads.
- The wars created a period of insecurity in Masailand.
- There was depopulation in the area as many people migrated to safer areas.
- The Purko emerged victorious and the Kwavi were greatly weakened.
- The wars greatly weakened Masai supremacy in Kenya and the Nandi emerged as the most powerful tribe in Western Kenya.
- The wars resulted into famine and suffering in Masailand due to neglect of agriculture.
- The succession struggles ended with the separation of the Masai e.g. Laibon Sendeyo and his group occupied

Tanzania and Laibon Lenana's group remained in Kenya.

- Natural disasters like small pox and locust invasion further weakened the Masai influence.
- The Masai were easily colonized by the British due to the decline in their power.
- The Masai were tricked into signing treaties with the British which forced them into reserves.
- Masailand was later on taken over by the British colonialists.

THE ACHOLI

Origins

- They fall under the bigger group of the Luo speaking communities.
- They currently occupy Northern Uganda in districts such as Gulu, Pader and Kitgum.
- They emerged out of intermarriages between the Luo, Ateker and Sudanic Madi.
- They originally lived in Bahr-el-Ghazel in Southern Sudan.
- Their migration took place between 1200 – 1350 AD.

- They entered Uganda through Northern Uganda following the Albert Nile.

Political organisation

- The Acholi had a decentralized system of administration with no central authority.
- Political power was centered around the Rwoth chief.
- Rwoth was the political head and religious leader of his people.
- He ruled on the advice of a council of elders from all major clans.
- Rwoth gave favours according to work done.
- Political affairs were handled by the clans with each having its own rituals and regalia.
- Each family belonged to a particular clan that shared a common ancestry.
- Clan councils upheld traditional, religious and legal customs.
- The family was the basic social unit.
- The man had a lot of power over his wife and children.
- The Rwoth appointed village heads called Jogos.

- The duty of the Jogos was to maintain law and order in their respective villages.
- The Jogos were also charged with tribute and tax collection.
- The Acholi had no standing army but the youth were supposed to defend the chiefdoms incase of war.
- The youths were also supposed to carry out raids for cattle.

Social organisation

- They believed in a supreme god called Jok-Lubanga as the creator and sustainer of the world.
- The Acholi always prayed to him through the spirits.
- The Rwoth was the religious head of his people.
- He was believed to have direct links with the ancestors.
- Inheritance followed the father's line.
- Land was communally owned.
- It was the duty of the clan heads to protect it on behalf of his people.

Economic organisation

- ✓ Their main economic activity was pastoralism and they kept short horned cattle.

- ✓ They also carried out agriculture and grew crops such as millet, peas, beans and sorghum.
- ✓ They highly valued cows for prestige, bride wealth and rewards.
- ✓ Fishing was also carried out by those who stayed near the rivers.
- ✓ They traded with their neighbours like the Langi, Banyoro and Sudanese.

Revision questions

1. Describe the **political, social** and **economic** organization of any two of the following societies;
(a)Kikuyu **(b**)Nyamwezi **(c**)Itesot **(d**)Karamojong **(e**)Galla **(f)**Chagga **(g**)Maasai (h) Acholi

2. a) Describe the **origins** of the Nyamwezi.
b) What were the ways of life of the Nyamwezi before the coming of Europeans?

3 .a) Describe the **career and achievements** of **Mirambo**.

b) What caused the **fall/collapse/decline** of his empire?

4. a) Describe the career of **Nyungu ya mawe**.
b) Why did his empire **last/survive** longer than that of Mirambo?

5. a) What caused the 19th century **Maasai civil wars**?
b) What were the **consequences/results/effects** of these wars?

6. a) Explain the **relationship** between the Maasai and Kikuyu during the 19th century.
b) What led to the **decline** of Maasai power and influence?

PRE-COLONIAL TRADE IN THE INTERIOR EAST AFRICA

- Before the 19th century, African societies carried out some trade among themselves.
- This was because no society produced all it needed to survive.

- This internal trade was always conducted on a barter system.
- However around the 1st half of the 19th century (1840-1850), Long Distance Trade developed.
- This involved movements of people from local to international levels all over E. Africa.

LONG DISTANCE TRADE

- It was also called pre-colonial caravan trade.
- This was the trade that was carried between the coastal merchants and the interior tribes in E.Africa.
- The traders covered very long distances from the interior to the coast.
- Long distances had to be covered in caravans of between 100-1000 men to and from the coast.
- This always took months or even a year before they would reach the coast and back to the interior.
- The main participants in the trade included Nyamwezi, Kamba, Yao, Chagga, Kikuyu, Baganda, Banyoro and the Luo.
- These traded with the Arabs and Swahili people at the coast.

- Goods from the interior included ivory, animals, Skins, Slaves, Gold, Bee wax, salt, and copper.
- They were all exchanged for goods like beads, guns, mirrors, clothes and glass which were brought by the coastal people.

Reasons for the development of the Long distance trade

❖ The trade developed because of several tribes that produced surplus goods which enabled them to offer some for sale.

❖ There was also high demand for foreign goods by African societies e.g. guns and clothes which they had to get from the coast.

❖ The arrival of the Portuguese at the coast in 1500 A.D also forced the Arabs to abandon the Indian Ocean trade and join the Long distance trade.

❖ The opening of trade routes in the interior of East Africa enabled the traders to reach all corners of East Africa for trade.

❖ Seyyid Said's settlement in Zanzibar in 1840 also increased the demand for slaves who were needed to work on his clove plantations.

- ❖ Availability of trade items also led to its development e.g. slaves, Ivory, Bee wax e.t.c were all available in the interior.
- ❖ The abolition of slave trade in West Africa around 1840 forced many Europeans to resort to East Africa were slave trade had not yet been abolished.
- ❖ Some interior tribes had the traditional love for traveling long distances for example the Nyamwezi.
- ❖ Division of labour among the African societies encouraged the men to get involved in trade.
- ❖ The development of Kiswahili as a business language made it easier for people to communicate in trade.
- ❖ The flat nature of the land enabled traders to easily move up and down looking for trade items.
- ❖ The coming of the Indian Banyans at the coast who financed traders and provided loans.
- ❖ The presence of capable leaders e.g. Mirambo, Seyyid Said, Tippu - Tip and Muteesa 1 who efficiently organized the trade.
- ❖ The introduction of cowrie shells as a form of currency also eased the transaction of business.

- ❖ The introduction of guns also improved security along the trade routes.
- ❖ Co-operation between interior tribes and coastal people also facilitated smooth trade.
- ❖ Presence of already developed coastal towns which acted as the trading centers e.g. Mombasa.
- ❖ Availability of guns helped in raiding of villages for slaves and hunting of elephants.
- ❖ The trade was so profitable to the participants leading to its development.
- ❖ Good and favourable climate encouraged trade throughout the year.
- ❖ Development in transport system e.g. use of donkeys which eased movement of traders.

Organization of the Long distance trade

- ❖ The trade involved many interior tribes e.g. Nyamwezi, Kamba, Yao, Chagga and Baganda.
- ❖ These traded with the coastal Arabs.
- ❖ The trade was organized on caravan basis.
- ❖ Each caravan would have over 1000 men armed and it included porters and medicine men.

- Goods from the interior included, ivory, slaves, gold and Iron implements e.g. axes, pangas, hoes.
- Those from the coast included beads, glassware, plates, cloths, and swords among others.
- Slaves were acquired through raids on villages and ivory was got through hunting of elephants.
- Trade was initially conducted on a barter trade system i.e. goods exchanged for goods.
- Later on, cowrie shells were introduced but these were also later replaced by small copper coins.
- Trade was controlled by interior chiefs who negotiated with the merchants from the coast.
- Trade was also conducted in trading centers along the trade routes e.g. Ujiji, Tabora and Bagamoyo.
- These trading centres also served as resting places.
- The trade also involved taxation for revenue.
- Traders from the coast paid taxes to the local chiefs in the interior before their caravans could be allowed passage.
- The medium of communication was Kiswahili because it was the business language.
- Where communication became a problem, interpreters were used.

- ❖ The best means of transport was head porterage and the Nyamwezi provided the most skilled porters, this was because they naturally enjoyed it and they loved walking for long distances.
- ❖ The Indian banyans were the financiers of the trade and they provided loans to the traders to go into the interior to buy goods.
- ❖ The trade followed three main specific trade routes i.e.

1. Northern trade route; it started from Pangani and Mombasa and passed through MT Kenya and Taita hills and it went up to Lake Baringo, crossing the rift valley up to Mt. Elgon. It was controlled by the Akamba.
2. Central trade route; this was the biggest and busiest route. It was controlled by Nyamwezi and it started from Bagamoyo through Zaramo, Gogoland, and Tabora to Karagwe, Buganda, Bunyoro up to Eastern Congo.
3. Southern trade route; It was controlled by the Yao. It started from Kilwa through Malawi, Southern Tanganyika up to the Muenomotapa Kingdom in Congo.

4. There was another less significant route from Southern Sudan through Northern Uganda, Turkana land via the Kenyan highlands up to the coast. It was controlled by the Khartoumers from Sudan.

The roles played by different tribes in the Long Distance Trade

Nyamwezi

- The Nyamwezi offered market for goods from the coast.
- On their return from the coast they always came with goods e.g. glass ware.
- They lived in central Tanzania and they were 1st people to move to the coast in caravans around 1830.
- The Nyamwezi acted as porters during the long distance trade and they enjoyed walking long distances.
- The Nyamwezi also supplied commodities to the traders e.g. copper, ivory, bee wax, salt, slaves.
- The Nyamwezi also controlled the biggest and the busiest route i.e. central trade route which linked Zaire / Katanga region, Bunyoro, Buganda to the East African coast.

- ❖ They acted as translators and interpreters in bargaining or negotiations because some of them had learnt Kiswahili language through their travels and because they played a role of middle men.
- ❖ The Nyamwezi also provided accommodation and lodging facilities to the long distance traders e.g. centers like Ujiji and Tabora.
- ❖ They provided food stuffs and beverages to the coastal traders who penetrated into the interior.
- ❖ The Nyamwezi under Mirambo and Nyungu ya mawe were great organizers of the L.D.T.
- ❖ They built a large commercial empire in central Tanganyika.
- ❖ The Nyamwezi also acted as guides and guards along the central trade route.

Why the Nyamwezi got involved in the L.D.T

- ❖ The Nyamwezi lived in central Tanzania i.e. which gave them a middle man's position between the coastal Arabs and the interior tribes.
- ❖ Among the Nyamwezi society, division of labour existed i.e. the women were left at home to plant, weed

and harvest while the men simply cleared gardens and then joined trading activities.

- ❖ The Nyamwezi land was gifted with resources i.e. Ivory, Iron, copper, slaves, grains and hides which were highly demanded by the coastal traders.
- ❖ The Nyamwezi occupied a region in central Tanganyika that experienced long drought and therefore couldn't sustain them through farming hence resorting to trade with the coastal Arabs.
- ❖ The Ngoni invasion of the Southern trade route led into an increase in the volume of trade on the central route and this gave the Nyamwezi prominence in the trade.
- ❖ The introduction of guns also improved Nyamwezi's hunt for elephants and slaves on top of improving security along the trade routes.
- ❖ The Nyamwezi were surrounded by weak chiefdoms which made it very easy for them to attack and raid their neighbors for slaves.
- ❖ The Nyamwezi were good at walking long distances and therefore they found no problem carrying heavy tusks to the coast.

- ❖ Nyamwezi land was flat and since the journeys were so long, this eased the movement of caravans.
- ❖ Nyamwezi were very ambitious people who would always exploit any opportunity that came their way to the maximum.
- ❖ The emergence of Mirambo and Nyungu ya mawe also helped the Nyamwezi establish themselves as prominent long distance traders.

THE AKAMBA

- ❖ In the 1850's, the Akamba had established themselves as the most active long distance traders in the whole of Kenya.
- ❖ They occupied a dry area, lived a semi nomadic life and because of the poor soils they resorted to trade.
- ❖ They started trading with their neighbours e.g. Nyika, Embu, and Kikuyu hence getting access to the coast.
- ❖ The Kamba controlled the northern trade route and their major outlets were Mombasa and Pangani.
- ❖ With the development of the L.D.T, the Kamba became very active in slave trade and Ivory trade.
- ❖ They also supplied other items e.g. Tobacco, rhinoceros horns and wax to coastal traders.

- ❖ The Kamba were also skilled in Iron working such that they produced spears and arrows poisoned with snake poison.
- ❖ The Akamba also opened bases on their land to supply food to the passing caravan traders.
- ❖ The Akamba with their middle man position of the northern route provided relevant information in form of guards and guides.
- ❖ Under leaders like chief kivoi, the Akamba were encouraged to join long distance trade.
- ❖ They built a large commercial empire between Mt. Kenya and Mt. Kilimanjaro.

THE YAO

- ❖ The Yao were found in southern Tanganyika and they controlled the Southern trade route.
- ❖ The Yao were among the 1st people to participate in the L.D.T with their neighbours and the coastal merchants.
- ❖ The Yao were good slave raiders after learning military tactics of the Ngoni.
- ❖ They became a major source of slaves to the merchants.

- ❖ The Yao also served as middlemen connecting the interior tribes around Lake Malawi especially through Kilwa.
- ❖ Most of the Yao had embraced Islam hence they established good trading relations with the coastal merchants.
- ❖ Under powerful chiefs like Mpanda and Mataka i.e. the Yao were able to set up a strong empire and this encouraged many people to participate in the trade.
- ❖ Yao also served as porters in the trade because they were good at traveling long distances.
- ❖ Some of the Yao had learned Kiswahili through their contacts with the Arabs hence they acted as interpreters and translators in bargaining between the coastal Arabs and the interior tribes.
- ❖ They also provided food stuffs, beverages to the passing caravans.
- ❖ They also provided lodging facilities /accommodation to the traders.

PROBLEMS FACED IN THE L.D.T

The distance covered was too long i.e. the Journey had to be covered by foot yet the goods were to be carried on the head.

- ❖ The heavy taxes imposed on the Arabs and the interior chiefs generated into war hence making the trade unsafe.
- ❖ The Indian banyans also always charged high interest rates on the coastal merchants hence making the trade unprofitable.
- ❖ Tropical diseases e.g. Malaria, sleeping sickness claimed many lives of traders and slaves leading to the decline of the trade.
- ❖ Wild animals e.g. lions used to attack the traders on their way to the coast not until guns were introduced.
- ❖ The introduction of guns increased slave raids, tribal warfare hence making the interior unsafe for many traders.
- ❖ Communication was a big problem because of the language barrier i.e only a few people in the interior knew and understood Kiswahili.
- ❖ Hostile tribes like the Masai and Nandi also made the trade difficult because they always attacked the traders who tried to penetrate into their areas.

- ❖ The Ngoni invasion also disrupted the trade i.e. the Tuta Ngoni disrupted trade between Ujiji and Tabora while the Maseko Ngoni disrupted trade along the southern trade route.
- ❖ The geography of the interior of East Africa was scary and impassible e.g. forests, Mountains, Rift valleys, Lakes and rivers, the Nyika plateau.
- ❖ The climate of E.Africa especially in the rainy season was not favorable because it slowed the movement of slaves and traders.
- ❖ The exhaustion of some goods in the interior also proved to be a problem e.g. the Elephants for Ivory were killed in large numbers.
- ❖ The coming of the missionaries also led to the collapse of the trade i.e. they were against slave trade.
- ❖ The colonization of E.A was what finally led to the eventual collapse of the long distance because slave trade was abolished and legitimate trade was introduced.

EFFECTS OF THE L.D.T

- ❖ It led to the formation and expansion of states because they had acquired guns e.g. Nyamwezi, Buganda.
- ❖ L.D.T led to the raise of strong statesmen e.g Mirambo, Nyungu ya mawe, Kabalega, Kivoi, Mpanda and Mataka because they had acquired guns which helped them acquire economic and political power.
- ❖ Many people became rich in the interior especially the chiefs and rulers and it helped them enjoy high standards of living.
- ❖ The rise of some states also led to the decline of some other states especially those that did not have guns e.g the expansion of Buganda led to the decline of Busoga, Toro and Bunyoro.
- ❖ The introduction of guns increased warfare, slave raids and tribal conflicts in the interior that led to a lot of destruction of property.
- ❖ The captured slaves were badly treated during their transportation to the coast e.g. they were whipped and not given enough food.
- ❖ L.D.T led to the decline of agriculture because of constant slave raids which made cultivation difficult.

- ❖ Long distance trade led to the spread of Islam in the interior e.g some societies like Nyamwezi, Buganda and Kamba had many Moslems due to their contacts with Arabs.
- ❖ The trade also stimulated the growth and development of towns along the trade routes e.g Tabora, Ujiji and Bagamoyo
- ❖ Long distance trade caravan routes later developed into proper communication lines and this eased the transport system.
- ❖ The massive slave raids in the interior led to heavy depopulation especially in the southern Tanganyika e.g. Yao land.
- ❖ The introduction of guns almost depopulated the wildlife e.g. elephants' population in Nyamwezi area reduced highly due to the need for Ivory.
- ❖ Long distance trade opened up E.Africa to the outside world and this attracted many Europeans who came as traders, missionaries and explorers.
- ❖ Provided alternative livelihood to societies in dry areas e.g. Nyamwezi and Kamba.
- ❖ It led to the rise of society misfits e.g. Ruga Ruga and Maviti warriors.

❖ Led to a decline in local/traditional industry e.g. bark cloth making.

SLAVE TRADE IN EAST AFRICA

- Slave trade was the commercial transaction of buying and selling human beings.
- In E.A Slave trade was introduced by Arabs in 1000 A.D.
- However, by 1850 slave trade was on the increase.

Reasons for the increase in slave trade by 1850

❖ Abolition of slave trade in west Africa in 1840 forced Europeans to divert their attention to the slaves from East Africa.

❖ Seyyid Said's transfer of his capital from Muscat to Zanzibar also led to the rise of slave trade. He introduced clove growing and his plantations needed slaves.

❖ The presence of the British troops on the Atlantic Ocean who constantly patrolled the Ocean which meant that the Europeans had to divert to East Africa for slaves.

- ❖ Increased demand for foreign goods like guns and mirrors by the interior chiefs also led to the increase of slave trade in the interior.
- ❖ Slaves were highly demanded world over i.e. the French had sugarcane plantations in Madagascar and Americans also had plantations in Brazil.
- ❖ The availability of caravan trade routes made it easy for slaves to be transported to the coast e.g. the southern trade route through Yao land.
- ❖ Introduction of guns made it easy for societies of raid each other hence acquiring slaves.
- ❖ The presence of able organizers especially the interior chiefs also led to the rise of slave trade e.g. Mirambo and Nyungu ya mawe of Nyamwezi, Tippu – Tip a coastal chief, chief kivoi of the kamba and chief Mataka of the Yao.
- ❖ The interstate and intertribal Conflicts also led to the rise of slave trade i.e. these misunderstandings between societies led to the raiding of each other for slaves.
- ❖ The presence of Kiswahili as a business language also led to rise of slave trade, because it made transactions very easy.

- ❖ Lack of valuable economic potentials in some areas e.g. Nyamwezi land in central Tanganyika was too dry and could not support Agriculture forcing the Nyamwezi to participate in slave trade
- ❖ The Islamic culture of not employing fellow Muslims also led to the development of slave trade. This forced the Arabs to penetrate the interior to get slaves from the pagan communities.
- ❖ The Absence of vehicles and Railways lines also led to the development of slave trade because slaves were needed to transport goods to the coast.
- ❖ The profits from slave trade were high hence forcing people like Akamba, Yao, and Nyamwezi to carry out slave trade.
- ❖ The primitive culture of some African Societies also led to the development of slave trade i.e. it was the only way of getting rid of criminals, robbers, witches and impotent men.
- ❖ The establishment of Zanzibar, kilwa, Mombasa as leading slave markets also led to the development of slave trade. These acted as collecting centers for slave traders.

- ❖ The presence of decentralized societies. This meant that people were always living in small communities hence it was easy to defeat such communities and acquire slaves.
- ❖ Decline of gold trade at the coast led the increase in slave trade. This was because the people had to look for alternative sources of survival.
- ❖ The hospitality given to foreigners by African leaders also encouraged many European and Arab traders to come to East Africa to engage in slave trade.

Organisation of slave trade

- ❖ Many interior tribes were involved in this trade e.g. Nyamwezi, Kamba, Yao, Chagga, Banyoro, Baganda.
- ❖ These constantly raided their neighbors for slaves and sold these slaves to Arabs and Swahili traders.
- ❖ Slaves were acquired through hand picking unfortunate members of the societies e.g. criminals.
- ❖ Also, massive raids were carried out in villages at night and young men and women were captured and then sold to the Arabs.
- ❖ Interior tribes were always at war with each other and the defeated society would always provide slaves.

- ❖ Middlemen were also used to acquire slaves in the interior and then transport them to the coast.
- ❖ After a slave trader had bought his slaves he would chain them together.
- ❖ Slaves were then loaded with goods like ivory and minerals on their heads.
- ❖ They would be forced to match to the coast.
- ❖ As they moved to the coast the cruel /harsh Arabs would whip them.
- ❖ Those who were weak were either left to die or killed and many of them would die before they would reach the coast.
- ❖ The survivors would be given some time to rest, feed, while some were nursed and given clothing to impress the buyers.
- ❖ The routes used in the slave trade were the Northern route dominated by the Akamba leading to Mombasa.
- ❖ The central route dominated by the Nyamwezi was leading to Dar-es-salaam then to Zanzibar.
- ❖ The southern route dominated by the Yao was leading to Kilwa.
- ❖ The khartoumers' route dominated by the sudaneese was leading to Bunyoro and Buganda.

- On reaching the coast, the slaves would be fed, clothed, nursed to attract high pay.
- After this they would be paraded for the prospective buyers.
- Buying would either be at kilwa, Mombasa, or Zanzibar.
- From here, the slaves were then transported to Europe, America and Arabia.

Effects of slave trade

- Many people were killed through the raids and others died on their way to the coast.
- The massive raids depopulated many areas in East Africa.
- Many people ran away due to fear and uncertainty.
- Slave trade caused untold suffering and miseries in many African societies' e.g. villages were burnt and people were left homeless.
- Slaves were mistreated by the buyers and this dehumanized the Africans.
- Slave trade led to the hatred between societies especially the strong societies always raided the weak ones.

- ❖ Slave trade brought a lot of wealth and profits for those who participated in it e. g. Nyamwezi, Yao, Akamba.
- ❖ Slave trade led to the growth and expansion of some societies as the strong ones always raided the weak ones. E.g. Buganda against Busoga.
- ❖ At the same time, it caused decline of other societies especially the weak ones e.g. Busoga.
- ❖ Famine and hunger set in as a result in decline of agriculture.
- ❖ Some people abandoned farming and took on slave trade.
- ❖ Slave trade led to the rise of important personalities e.g. Mirambo, Nyungu ya mawe and Mohammed Ibn Hamid (Tippu-Tip).
- ❖ Slave trade encouraged internal trade and foreign trade i.e. the slave Arab slave traders were not only interested in slaves but also other items e.g. copper, Ivory, bee wax, honey e.t.c
- ❖ Many young men grouped themselves into warrior groups as a result of slave trade e.g. the Ruga Ruga and Maviti warriors.

- ❖ Slave trade led to the colonization of East Africa this was because many whites (Europeans) came to East Africa with a purpose of abolishing slave trade.
- ❖ Many foreign goods were imported into East Africa e.g. Mirrors, clothes hence the local people enjoyed these goods for the first time.
- ❖ Slave trade led to the spread of Islam and Kiswahili language into the interior of East Africa.
- ❖ Slave trade opened up East Africa commercially to the outside world.
- ❖ This attracted the French, British and Portuguese traders to come to East Africa.
- ❖ Slave trade stimulated the growth of coastal towns e.g. Zanzibar, Mombasa, Kilwa and interior towns like Tabora, Ujiji which acted as collecting centers.
- ❖ Slave trade also led to underdevelopment of East Africa because only strong men were taken.

THE ABOLITION OF SLAVE TRADE

- The campaign of abolition of slave trade was mainly spear headed by the British.

Reasons for the abolition of slave trade

- The missionaries attacked slave trade as an inhuman act and therefore they persuaded the traders to stop slave trade
- The industrial revolution in Europe (1850) led to the introduction of machines which replaced human labour hence slaves had lost market in Europe.
- Population increase in Europe made it useless to bring in more people whose services were by this time not needed.
- The industrial revolution created a high demand for raw materials and therefore slaves had to be brought back to Africa to grow cash crops to feed the 'hungry' industries in Europe.
- Over production of goods like sugar, clothes made it necessary to re-settle slaves so as to provide market for these excessive goods produced in European industries.
- Slave strikes had become so frequent e.g. they demanded holidays on Sundays and worship rights hence there was need to abolish slave trade.
- The abolition of the Trans- Atlantic slave trade in West Africa made it equally important for the same trade to be abolished in E.A.

- ❖ Change in politics of Europe meant that more Europeans were coming to East Africa and therefore there was need to stop slave trade in East Africa so as to create peace and security.
- ❖ The issue of treaties against slave trade also led to the abolition of slave trade e.g. the 1822 Moresby treaty, 1845 Hamerton treaty and 1873 Frere treaty.
- ❖ The role of missionaries under different religious groups e.g. they set up homes for the freed slaves who were already Christian converts and this encouraged the process of abolition of slave trade.
- ❖ The role of the British navy led to the abolition of slave trade. It patrolled the Indian Ocean waters to track down traders who were using it for smuggling slaves.
- ❖ European explorers had earlier on drawn the map of the interior of East Africa which also encouraged the abolitionists to come to East Africa and stop the trade.

Obstacles/problems faced during abolition of slave trade

- ❖ Anti – slavery campaigns were only concentrated at the coast and on the Indian Ocean waters neglecting the interior which was the heart of slave trade.
- ❖ Lack of co-operation from other European countries e.g. Spain, France and Portugal etc…Which all looked at the British Anti – Slave trade campaign as selfish.
- ❖ It was a big financial burden for the Britain because she single handedly patrolled the Indian Ocean waters and compensated slave traders.
- ❖ Slavery was an accepted custom among many African societies because it was a way of getting rid of wrong doers in the society e.g. criminals and therefore African chiefs saw no problem with it.
- ❖ Hostile tribes e.g. the Yao and Nyamwezi didn't want any foreigner to cross their land hence delaying the abolition process.
- ❖ Freed slaves were also reluctant to be free because many of them didn't have any land, property and also lacked practical skills to sustain themselves.
- ❖ Wild animals also scared the few abolitionists who attempted to go into the interior mainly because East Africa was covered by thick forests.

- ❖ Physical geographical barriers E.g. Rivers, lakes, valleys etc blocked the movement of the abolitionists.
- ❖ Tropical diseases e.g. Malaria, Sleeping sickness, typhoid reduced the number of the abolitionists.
- ❖ Lack of transport and communication lines i.e. there were no developed roads leading into the interior.
- ❖ Language barrier i.e. abolitionists were not familiar with the languages of the interior so they found it hard to negotiate with the traders to stop slave trade.
- ❖ Many people had migrated to different areas meaning that when the British came in to stop slave trade they found it hard to bring together people who had scattered in different areas.
- ❖ The Arab slave traders were always armed with guns and were always ready to fight whoever interfered with their trading activities.
- ❖ There was lack of alternative means of transport to replace human porterage which was mainly done by the slaves.
- ❖ In some societies, there was no immediate alternative economic activity because it was their only source of livelihood e.g. in Nyamwezi land where it was very infertile for agriculture.

- Slave traders were very cunning and they could always raise the American flag when they saw a British patrol ship approaching.

STEPS TAKEN TO ABOLISH SLAVE TRADE

- It was Britain that spear headed the campaign against slave trade in the 18th century.
- In 1772, the Supreme court of England declared that Britain didn't allow slavery in England and those who owned slaves were supposed to free them.
- In 1807, through the effects of humanitarians (missionaries) and religious leaders, the British parliament passed a law making slave trade illegal.
- In 1815, the British navy started patrolling the Indian Ocean waters so as to check on the shipment of slaves.
- In 1822, the British used their influence to sign the Moresby treaty with sultan Seyyid Said. Captain Fair Fox Moresby signed on behalf of the British.
- By this treaty, no more slaves were to be exported to India, Madagascar, Mauritius and Christian countries.
- In 1824, Captain Owen set up the Owen protectorate over Mombasa to stop slave trade activities in the area.

- However this didn't work because slave trade was carried out along the whole coast and not only at Mombasa.
- In 1845, the Hamerton treaty was signed between Sultan Seyyid said and colonel Hamerton.
- The treaty persuaded Seyyid said to stop buying and selling slaves within and outside East Africa.
- Unfortunately, in 1856 Seyyid said died and colonel Hamerton also died in 1857.
- Seyyid Said was succeeded by his son sultan Ibn Majid who was not to co-operate with the British.
- Therefore the process of abolishing slave trade came to a standstill.
- It was not until 1870 when sultan Bargash took over the throne from Sultan Majid.
- In 1873, Sultan Bargash signed the Frere treaty with Sir Batte Frère to end slavery at Zanzibar.
- All slave markets in Zanzibar were closed.
- In 1890, Zanzibar became a British protectorate.
- In 1897, the Zanzibar slave market was burnt down and this ended slavery in Zanzibar and Pemba.
- In 1919, Britain took over the control of Tanganyika.

- She speeded up the process of ending slavery in mainland Tanganyika.
- In 1921, the compete abolition process was achieved.
- Britain imposed a law against slavery and this totally marked the end of slavery.

Why did the process of abolition take so long?

- The Indian Ocean was too big to be patrolled by British navy alone.
- European super powers e.g. France and Germany were not willing the support the abolition of slave trade because they still needed the slave workers.
- Britain lacked the funds for the campaign against slave trade i.e. it was very expensive.
- British war ships were always over powered by Arab slave traders because they were always many and had guns.
- The British were not familiar with all the various inlets and outlets used by the Arab slave traders.
- The abolition treaties signed were in most cases under looked by the slave traders.

- ❖ Arab slave traders were very cunning e.g. they always used the American flag once they saw the British patrol ships approaching.
- ❖ East Africa lacked alternative means of transport to replace human porterage which was mainly done by slaves.
- ❖ Members of the British navy always suffered and died from tropical diseases e.g. Malaria.
- ❖ The freed slaves didn't have any where to go after abolition of slave trade hence the process was made long.
- ❖ Interior chiefs e.g. Nyungu Ya Mawe, Mirambo, Kivoi, Mataka had built their empires using slave trade wealth and were not ready to abolish slave trade.
- ❖ Physical barriers e.g. Forests Mountains, Rivers, Lakes etc always made the work of the abolitionists very difficult.
- ❖ There was language barrier which also delayed the abolition of slave trade.

Effects of the abolition of slave trade

- There was decline of the former slave trading states e.g. Yao, and Nyamwezi because they had lost their source of their economic power.
- There was also loss of wealth and income to those individuals and societies that greatly depended on slave trade.
- The Yao who had made slave trade their sole occupation could not settle down to do agriculture after slave trade was abolished.
- There was population increase because the human exports that had depopulated mainland East Africa had stopped.
- Agriculture improved and new crops were introduced to facilitate the transition from slave trade to legitimate trade e.g. coffee, tea and sisal, e.t.c.
- People started attending to their farm lands which they had neglected during the slave trade era and this increased food production.
- People regained their status and dignity that had been eroded by slavery and slave trade.
- Security greatly improved because slave raids that had de-stabilized the interior were brought to an end.

- The abolition increased the spread of Christianity and Western culture.
- Missionaries therefore built mission stations, schools and hospitals for the freed slaves.
- Transport was improved. The Uganda railway was built to facilitate and aid the transfer from slave trade to legitimate trade.
- The abolition also led to the increase of European penetration into the interior of E.A especially the humanitarians.
- This subsequently led to the colonization of East Africa and this led to the loss of independence by East African states.
- The abolition of slave trade led to the introduction of legitimate trade. This was the trade in natural products e.g. cotton, coffee, Tea, sisal, etc. but not people.
- Former slave trade routes later developed into proper communication lines and this increased European penetration into the interior.
- The intertribal war that were always fought to acquire slaves were minimized which brought in an era of peace and security.

❖ Local people hated their traditional rulers who had collaborated with slave traders i.e. there was hatred between who had participated in slave trade and those who were opposed to it.

Revision questions

1. a) What factors led to the **development** of the Long distance trade in East Africa?

b) Describe the **organization** of the Long distance trade in the 19th century.

2. a) How was the Long distance trade in East Africa **organized** between 1800-1880?

b) What **problems** were faced by the merchants in the Long distance trade?

3. a) Why did the Lon````g distance trade **decline** during the 2nd half of the 19th century ?

b) What **impacts/consequences/effects/results** did it have on the peoples East Africa?

4. a)Describe the role played by any **two** of the following societies in the 19th century Long distance trade

(1)Nyamwezi (2) Kamba (3) Yao

b) Why did the trade decline in the 2nd half of the 19th century?

5. a) Why did the Nyamwezi get involved in the 19th century Long distance trade?

b) What roles did they play in the organization of the trade?

6. a)Why did slave trade expand in East Africa in the first half of the 19th century?

b) How was Slave trade organized?

7. a) Describe the **working** of Slave trade in East Africa in the early 19th century.

b) What were the effects/consequences/results/outcomes of this trade?

8. a) Why was Slave trade **abolished** in East Africa during the 2nd half of the 19th century?

b) Why did the process of abolition prove to be so difficult?

9. a) Describe the **steps taken** by the British to abolish Slave trade in East Africa.

b) What problems were met by the abolitionists?

10. a) Outline the **steps taken** to abolish Slave trade in East Africa?

b) What were the **effects of the abolition** of Slave trade on the peoples of East Africa?

EUROPEAN ACTIVITIES IN EAST AFRICA

- From 1884, a growing number of Europeans picked interest in East Africa.
- These came as explorers, missionaries, traders and later on imperialists /colonialists.
- Most Europeans were either sent by their home government or by Organizations e.g. the R.G.S (Royal Geographical society), C.M.S (Church missionary society) and L.M.S (London missionary society).
- Others came as individuals e.g. Sir Samuel Baker and his wife and Dr. David Livingstone.

- Most Africans received them with open hands and offered them assistance not knowing that their activities would eventually lead to loss of African independence.

EXPLORERS IN EAST AFRICA

- This was the 1st group of Europeans to penetrate into the interior of E.Africa.
- They were interested in the geography of East Africa especially the River Nile system.
- The explorers included; Sir Samuel Baker and his wife, Richard Burton, John Speke, Henry Morton Stanley, Dr. David Livingstone, James Grant, Jacob Erhadt e.t.c.
- The activities of these explorers eventually led to the colonization of East Africa.

The role played by explorers in the colonization of East Africa

❖ They exaggerated the wealth of East Africa e.g. they reported about the reliable rainfall and fertile soils e.g. in Buganda which attracted more Europeans into East Africa.

- ❖ They provided geographical information about East Africa which attracted Europeans into East Africa e.g. John Speke discovered the source of the River Nile.
- ❖ The explorers destroyed the wrong impression that Africa was a '' white man's grave '' which led to an influx of Europeans into East Africa.
- ❖ Some explorers signed treaties with African chiefs which were later used to colonize such areas e.g. H.M Stanley requested Muteesa 1 of Buganda to invite missionaries.
- ❖ Explorers also drew maps which were later used by the colonialist to penetrate the interior of East Africa e.g. Erhadt drew a map of East Africa showing physical features.
- ❖ They established good working relations with African chiefs e.g. Stanley with Muteesa 1 which confused the Africans who thought that all white men were good and welcomed colonialists.
- ❖ They gave information about hostile and accommodative societies which helped colonialists come well prepared e.g. Banyoro were branded hostile while the Baganda were accommodative.

- ❖ Explorers also exposed the horrors of slave trade e.g. Dr Livingstone and this aroused public sympathy among Europeans to come and abolish the trade leading to colonialism.
- ❖ The success of their adventures led to increased missionary activities in East Africa e.g. Dr Livingstone persuaded missionaries to come and stop slave trade leading to colonialism.
- ❖ Explorers under their umbrella organizations also provided funds to those who were willing to travel to Africa leading to an influx of Europeans e.g. The Royal Geographical Society.
- ❖ Some Explorers served as colonial administrators and provided labour force for the colonial government e.g. Sir Samuel Baker became a governor of the Equatorial Province.
- ❖ Some explorers built forts which were later used as administrative centers by colonialists e.g. sir Samuel Barker built Fort Patiko in Acholi and Sir Gerald Portal built Fort Portal in Toro.
- ❖ Explorers also discovered routes and navigable waters which simplified the movement of future colonialists.

CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES IN EAST AFRICA

- This was the 2nd group of Europeans to penetrate into the interior of East Africa.
- Missionaries also came to East Africa under several organization e.g.
  - Church Missionary Society led by Johann Ludwig Krapf and John Rebmann.
  - London Missionary Society led by Dr David Livingstone.
  - Holy Ghost fathers led by Father Homer.
  - White Fathers who were Catholics e.g. Father Lourdel and Brother Ammans.

Why the missionaries came to East Africa

- They wanted to spread Christianity in East Africa because many of them believed that Africans didn't know anything about God.
- Missionaries wanted to abolish slave trade and Slavery in East Africa because they considered it to be inhuman.

- ❖ Missionaries wanted to promote Western Education in order to civilize the backward Africans.
- ❖ Missionaries also wanted to create a civil society by eradicating African Cultures and customs e.g. witchcraft and Killing of twins.
- ❖ The success of earlier travels by Explorers also inspired missionaries to come to East Africa.
- ❖ Missionaries wanted to answer the call of the African desire of evangelism e.g. Kabaka Muteesa 1 of Buganda sent a letter inviting missionaries through Henry Morton Stanley.
- ❖ Missionaries were also driven by the desire to reduce the spread of Islam which they blamed for the slave trade in the interior.
- ❖ They wanted to promote legitimate trade in East Africa after abolishing slave trade e.g. by introducing cash crops like coffee and tea.
- ❖ Some missionaries came to East Africa to complete the work of Dr David Livingstone who had died in 1873 and had left a big part of his work incomplete.
- ❖ Missionaries also had the intention of improving on the living conditions of Africans i.e. they wanted to fight diseases which had made life difficult for Africans.

- ❖ Some missionaries came to East Africa for exploration and adventure e.g. John Rebmann and Ludwig Krapf.
- ❖ Missionaries also came to East Africa due to the industrial revolution which had generated a lot of wealth for overseas adventures to spread Christianity.
- ❖ Missionaries were paving way for the European colonialists through their wonderful teachings by softening the hearts of Africans.

Problems faced by missionaries in East Africa

- ❖ Language barrier i.e. East Africa had many tribes and each had its own language therefore forcing missionaries to rely on interpreters.
- ❖ Tropical diseases also made their work difficult e.g. Dr. Livingstone died in 1873 due to Malaria.
- ❖ Hostility from Islam especially at the coast because the Arabs created a big challenge to the missionaries.
- ❖ Transport was poor since there were no developed roads at the time and missionaries had to walk very long distances from the coast to the Interior.
- ❖ Missionaries also faced difficult times in the interior due to hostile tribes e.g. the Galla, Maasai and Nandi.

- ❖ Geographical barriers also caused a lot of hardships to the missionaries e.g. they had to cross lakes, rivers, thick forests, Mountains, rift valleys e.t.c.
- ❖ East Africa was very far away from Europe and therefore missionaries would not effectively communicate with their home government.
- ❖ Wild animals e.g. lions and leopards also made missionaries' work difficult for example some of them and their followers were eaten up by lions at Tsavo.
- ❖ Missionaries at times lacked enough supplies e.g. they ran short of funds, food and medicines.
- ❖ Missionary work was also hindered by their small number in East Africa yet the area was very big.
- ❖ In some cases, their porters deserted them and ran away with their property e.g. Dr Livingstone lost his property to porters on his 2nd journey to Tanganyika.
- ❖ Missionaries were also mistaken for people with military assistance e.g. Kabaka Muteesa 1 of Buganda expected them to give him guns to fight Bunyoro.
- ❖ Missionaries also had quarrels and rivalry among their different missionary groups e.g. the W'ngereza-W'faransa wars (religious wars) in Buganda.

- ❖ Some missionaries wasted a lot of time in other activities e.g. Johann Rebmann turned to exploration and adventure instead of spreading Christianity.
- ❖ Missionaries were also disturbed by the traditionalists who threatened their authority and beliefs e.g. Bishop Hannington was killed because he was believed to be an enemy.

Effects of missionary activities

- ❖ The missionaries converted many people to Christianity and up to today the majority of the East Africans are Christians.
- ❖ Missionaries built several schools in Uganda to increase literacy e.g. Gayaza high school (1905), S.t Mary's college Kisubi (1908) and King's College Budo (1906).
- ❖ Missionaries also built several hospitals and provided better health services e.g. Rubaga Hospital by the white fathers and Mengo Hospital by the church missionary society.
- ❖ Missionaries also set up technical and vocational schools to provide practical skills, e.g. in carpentry and

Tailoring and such schools ware built at Kisubi, Iganga and soroti.

- ❖ Churches were built wherever missionaries went and traditional shrines were destroyed e.g. at Nsambya, Rubaga, Namirembe e.t.c.
- ❖ Missionaries also brought a culture of morality, respect for life and created a civil society e.g. the killing of twins in Bunyoro was abolished.
- ❖ Missionaries fought slave trade by preaching equality of all men before God and ended up setting up homes for freed slaves.
- ❖ Missionaries also promoted the writing of East Africa's Languages e.g. Dr Krapf translated the Bible into Luganda.
- ❖ Missionaries also introduced the growing of cash crops e.g. cotton, coffee and pyrethrum.
- ❖ Missionaries also opened up mission stations that later developed into urban centers e.g. at Bagamoyo, Tabora, Kampala and Rabai Mpya.
- ❖ Missionaries also created employment opportunities as many Africans who were trained as nurses, teachers, interpreters or translators and clergymen.

- ❖ Missionaries also introduced many new languages like Latin, German, French and English which were taught to all students in missionary schools.
- ❖ Missionaries also carried out exploration work e.g. Dr Krapf discovered Mt Kenya in 1849 and DR Rebmann discovered Mt Kilimanjaro in 1848.
- ❖ Missionaries also introduced new styles of dressing, dancing, eating, Marriage and burial which were all to be conducted religiously.
- ❖ Missionaries divided Buganda and Uganda along religious lines e.g. political parties like Democratic Party for Catholics and Uganda Peoples' Congress for Protestants.
- ❖ Missionary education produced the pioneer nationalists of East Africa e.g. Jomo Kenyatta in Kenya, Apollo Milton Obote in Uganda and Julius Nyerere in Tanzania.
- ❖ Missionaries also constructed many roads which improved the transport sector in East Africa.

Effects of missionary activities on the Africans

- ❖ Africans embraced Christianity and neglected their traditional religions.

- ❖ Africans also neglected traditional medicines and went to missionary hospitals for treatment.
- ❖ Hospitals helped Africans to fight against the tropical diseases like malaria.
- ❖ Disunity was created among Africans due to divisions along religious lines.
- ❖ Africans attained western education by joining mission schools and neglected local education.
- ❖ Africans adopted the growing of cash crops and neglected the growing of traditional food crops.
- ❖ Africans enjoyed improved standards of living e.g. improved medical care.
- ❖ Urban centers were created in areas where missionaries settled e.g. Kampala and Bagamoyo.
- ❖ Africans adopted western cultures e.g. dressing and burial which were conducted religiously.
- ❖ Abolition of slave trade helped Africans to regain their dignity and respect.
- ❖ Many Africans gained employment in the colonial government after training e.g. secretaries.
- ❖ Africans also acquired many technical skills after attending technical schools e.g. building.

- ❖ Missionary education led to the rise of African nationalism e.g. formation of political parties.
- ❖ African dropped some of their cultures and customs e.g. killing of twins in Bunyoro.
- ❖ African minds were softened due to their wonderful preachings to easily allow colonialism.
- ❖ Africans were convinced to sign treaties which eventually led to loss of their land e.g. 1900 Buganda agreement.

The role played by missionaries in the colonisation of East Africa

- ❖ Through their wonderful preachings, missionaries softened the heart and minds of the Africans who welcomed colonialism with open arms.
- ❖ They often called on home governments to occupy areas where they worked leading to eventual colonisation.
- ❖ They involved themselves in the over throw of local rulers who were resisting Europeans e.g. Kabaka Mwanga was overthrown and replaced by a ‘ Puppet ‘ Kabaka Daudi Chwa.
- ❖ Missionaries only settled in areas where their h

❖
❖
❖
❖ ome governments had economic interests which attracted colonialists to come and take over such areas e.g. in Buganda.
❖ Missionaries also convinced Africa chiefs into signing treaties which were later used to colonize such areas e.g. Bishop Tucker assisted in the signing of the 1900 Buganda Agreement.
❖ Missionaries laid a firm economic foundation for the colonial government to survive on by encouraging the growing of cash crops.
❖ They helped to finance other colonial agents e.g. The Church Missionary Society in 1891 injected 50,000 pounds into the activities of IBEACO which was also used in the colonisation process.
❖ Missionaries divided Africans along religious lines hence creating disunity e.g. in Buganda, Kabaka Mwanga was disunited from his subjects or followers who could not unite to fight colonialism.

- ❖ Missionaries helped to abolish slave trade and this created a conducive atmosphere for European settlement in East Africa leading to colonization.
- ❖ Missionaries identified hostile and accommodative societies e.g. Buganda was accommodative while Nandi were branded hostile which helped the colonialists to deal with the people accordingly.
- ❖ Missionaries also built schools in which Africans were brain washed to believe that everything western was good hence the Africans embraced colonial rule with open hands.
- ❖ Missionary education and teachings created a class of collaborators e.g. Sir Apollo Kaggwa, Semei Kakungulu who helped in extending colonial rule.
- ❖ Missionaries also set up mission stations e.g. at Bagamoyo and Rabai Mpya which were later used as administrative posts by colonialists.
- ❖ Missionaries also encouraged the use of foreign language e.g. English and Latin and this made communication between the Africans and colonialists very easy.

❖ Missionaries constructed hospitals to provide health services which were later used by colonialists to fight against the burden of tropical diseases.

MISSIONARY ACTIVITIES IN BUGANDA

- The 1st missionaries to arrive were the Church Missionary Society Protestant missionaries in 1876 and these were Rev. Alexander Mackay, Rev. C.T. Wilson and Sir Gold Smith.
- In 1879, Roman Catholic Missionaries led by Fr Simon Lourdel and Brother Ammans under the white fathers arrived at Kabaka Muteesa 1's palace.
- In 1896, the Mill hill Fathers arrived who were also Catholics.
- The Verona Fathers (Catholics) were the last to arrive from Sudan in 1910.

Why Kabaka Muteesa 1 invited missionaries

❖ Muteesa 1 wanted to answer H. M Stanley's request for missionaries to come to Buganda and did not want to disappoint his visitors.

- ❖ Muteesa 1 also hoped that he would enhance prestige among his fellow African chiefs by inviting white men to his palace.
- ❖ Muteesa 1 was also tired of the constant raids and demands from Muslims and traditionalists and hoped that missionaries would help me solve these conflicts.
- ❖ Muteesa 1 also wanted to make strong ties with their countries of origin because they were powerful states.
- ❖ He was a modernizer who believed that missionaries were the right people to help him modernize Buganda.
- ❖ He expected to get military assistance from missionaries against his traditional enemy Bunyoro.
- ❖ He expected military help against Egyptian aggressors who were busy extending the equatorial province south wards.
- ❖ Muteesa 1 also expected military help against Sudanese mercenaries who were hired to attack Buganda from the north.
- ❖ He wanted the missionaries to teach Christianity to his people since H. M Stanley had convinced him that the faith would be good for his people.
- ❖ Muteesa 1 also hoped that his people would gain from missionaries' knowledge and technical skills.

- ❖ Muteesa 1 was also ignorant and did not know the intensions of the missionaries but simply invited them.
- ❖ Christianity had softened Muteesa 1's heart and he ended up inviting the missionaries to Buganda.
- ❖ Muteesa also expected gifts from them in form of clothes, glassware and mirrors.

THE W'NGEREZA - W'FRANSA WARS

- These were also known as the religious wars in Buganda.
- They were fought between four different religious groups in Buganda i.e. Protestants, Catholics, traditionalists and Moslems.
- They were fought between 1885 and 1900.

Causes of religious wars

- ❖ The struggle by each religious group to win as many converts as possible led to confusion within Buganda hence resulting into the religious wars.
- ❖ Each religious group was struggling to win the favor and recognition of the Kabaka Muteesa 1, hence resulting into the religious wars.

- ❖ The death of Muteesa 1 in 1884 created a political vacuum in Buganda hence leading to confusion with in Buganda.
- ❖ The differences in the teaching of the different religious groups also confused the followers resulting into the religious wars.
- ❖ Christians didn't want to be dominated by the Muslims who were also unwilling to be dominated by Christians i.e. each group considered the other to be pagans.
- ❖ Imperial rivalry between France and Britain during the scramble and partition also led to the outbreak of the wars between Catholics and Protestants respectively.
- ❖ There was also mistrust between the different Christian groups because each group wanted to dominate political offices in Buganda resulting into the wars.
- ❖ A rumor had circulated within Buganda that while in exile at Kabula, Kabaka Mwanga was learning Anglicanism and therefore the Catholics wanted to over throw him.

- ❖ The traditionalists hated Christians because they had undermined Buganda's cultural beliefs independence.
- ❖ The involvement of IBEACO in Buganda's politics also led to these wars e.g. in 1891, Captain Lugard armed the Protestants with 500 guns to fight the Catholics.
- ❖ The pages/servants at the Kabaka's court (palace) were always questioning the Kabaka's authority which forced Mwanga to kill thirty of them leading to the religious wars.
- ❖ Mwanga's arrogance, inconsistence and unfriendly relations with missionaries also contributed to the outbreak of the religious wars.
- ❖ The Catholics also accused Kabaka Mwanga of accepting IBEACO to work in Buganda because it was mistreating the Catholics.
- ❖ Each religious group wanted very many pages at the Kabaka's palace and this resulted ito the wars.
- ❖ Kabaka Mwanga's failure to control foreigners at his palace resulted into conflicts between the different groups.

- ❖ The role of Arabs who misguided Kabaka Mwanga that Christians wanted to take over his kingdom also led to the wars.
- ❖ The murder of Bishop Hannington in Busoga in 1885 following the orders of Kabaka Mwanga also angered the Christians who resorted to war in order to overthrow Mwanga.
- ❖ The killing of the Uganda martyrs at Namugongo in 1886 also caused a lot of chaos and confusion within Buganda resulting into the religious wars.

Course of the religious wars

- ➢ These were the conflicts between the Christians, Muslims and traditionalists in Buganda.
- ➢ These wars took place between 1885 to 1890.
- ➢ By 1877, the Protestant missionaries under the Church Missionary Society arrived in Buganda.
- ➢ In 1879, the Roman Catholic missionaries also arrived in Buganda.
- ➢ All these groups had come after the invitation from Kabaka Muteesa 1 of Buganda.
- ➢ These two Christian groups were soon fighting for political influence at the Kabaka's court.

- In 1884, Kabaka Muteesa 1 died and was succeeded by Kabaka Mwanga.
- By this time, Muslims who had stayed longer in Buganda used their influence to warn Mwanga that the Christians wanted to take over his kingdom.
- Kabaka Mwanga's arrogance forced him to respond by denouncing all the new religions that never respected his authority.
- In 1885, Bishop Hannington was killed in this crisis in Busoga following the orders of Kabaka Mwanga.
- In 1886, many Christian converts were burnt to death at Namugongo also following the orders of Kabaka Mwanga.
- Sensing continued instability, Kabaka Mwanga planned to chase away all the religious factions from Buganda including Christians and Muslims.
- But they discovered his plan and the religious groups combined to overthrow him.
- Thereafter, they installed Kabaka Kiwewa as the successor to Kabaka Mwanga.
- By this time, Muslims were the strongest faction and they soon deposed Kiwewa for refusing to be circumcised.

- Kalema was installed as the new Kabaka after deposing Kiwewa.
- Muslims started persecuting Christians who fled to Kabula in Nkore.
- Christians reorganized themselves and Catholics came under leadership of Nyonyintono Honerat while Protestants came under Apollo Kaggwa.
- In 1890, Christian factions deposed the Muslims and Mwanga was reinstated with a lot of Catholic sympathies.
- In the same year (1890), Captain Lugard arrived in Uganda as a representative of IBEACO.
- Lugard used protestant missionaries to influence Mwanga for a treaty with Britain.
- Thereafter, he armed the Protestants with 500 guns and this caused more fighting against the Catholics and Muslims.
- Muslims then fled to Bunyoro and Captain Lugard also followed them after realizing that Catholics also wanted him dead.
- In 1893, Sir Gerald Portal signed a treaty with Mwanga.
- In 1894, a protectorate was declared over Uganda.

- In 1897, Mwanga was overthrown and replaced by his infant son Daudi Chwa II.
- Mwanga then Joined Kabalega in a rebellion in the North and the two were captured by Kakungulu.
- In March 1900, the Buganda agreement was signed and this ended the religious wars in Buganda.

Effects of the religious wars

- The wars divided the Baganda and the whole of Uganda along religious lines.
- The wars subsequently created enmity between the followers of the different religious groups.
- They led to the formation of political parties along religious lines such as U.P.C (Uganda Peoples' Congress) for Protestants and D.P (Democratic Party) for the Catholics.
- Many people were killed during the wars e.g. 30 converts (Uganda martyrs) were murdered in 1886 at Namugongo.
- Many people who had supported the Protestants gained political offices in Buganda upon victory e.g. Semei Kakungulu and Apollo Kaggwa.

- Armed Christian groups were formed in order to defend themselves e.g. the Protestants had 500 guns given to them by Captain Fredrick Lugard.
- Political offices in Buganda were allocated along religious lines e.g. Katikiro /Prime minister was to be a Protestant where as Omulamuzi or chief justice was to be a Catholic.
- The Catholics and Muslims were sidelined at Mengo and therefore remained in political inferiority.
- Schools in Buganda were run on sectarian ground e.g. Kings College Budo was for the Protestants and st Mary's College Kisubi was for the Catholics.
- The 22 counties of Buganda were allocated on religious grounds.
- The Protestants got 12 counties, 8 for the Catholics and 2 for the Muslims.
- The Wars confused Mwanga to the extent of failing to decide on which religion to follow thus he kept on wavering his support from one group to another.
- Mwanga was later forced to exile where he accepted Christianity along protestant lines taking the name Daniel.

- The Wars also led to the eventual colonization of Uganda as Christian Missionaries especially Protestants called upon the British to take over Uganda to protect their lives and interests.
- Led to the rise of different personalities e.g. Sir Apollo Kaggwa and Semei Kakungulu.
- The wars slowed down growth of nationalism in Uganda due to divisions along religious lines.
- Christianity was wide spread within Buganda and Uganda at large.
- The wars caused massive destruction of property in Buganda.
- Buganda's traditional religion greatly declined due to wide spread Christianity.
- The confusion created by the wars led to the signing of the 1900 Buganda Agreement.
- Islam was greatly reduced in influence within Buganda.
- Many people fled to other parts of Uganda due to insecurity in Buganda e.g. fled to Bunyoro.

TRADERS AND CHARTERED COMPANIES IN E.AFRICA

- The 3rd group of Europeans to penetrate into the interior of E.A was the traders.
- They came in large numbers after the successful mission of explorers and missionaries.
- Traders basically came for commercial reasons e.g. looking for cheap sources of raw materials, new markets and new areas for investment.
- On arrival the traders formed companies and associations to operate in East Africa and most prominent ones were;

- Imperial British East Africa Company (IBEACO) which operated in Uganda and Kenya.
- German East Africa Company (GEACO) which operated in Tanganyika.

THE ROLE OF CHARTERED COMPANIES IN THE COLONIZATION OF EAST AFRICA

- They provided the initial skilled man power for the administration of their areas of influence e.g. captain Fredrick Lugard (IBEACO) and Captain Karl peters (GEACO).

- The traders financed the colonial administration on behalf of their respective home government e.g. I.B.E.A.CO on behalf of the British government.
- The traders fought and defeated rebellious societies e.g. IBEACO defeated Bunyoro, Nandi and Maasai while the G.E.A.CO fought /defeated the Abushiri Arabs.
- The traders also developed transport and communication networks e.g. IBEACO constructed Murram roads and even designed the plan for the Uganda railway.
- They under took businesses that generated funds that supported colonialism e.g. they encouraged people to grow cash crops.
- They constructed administrative posts, forts and garrisons which were later used by the colonial government e.g. at Old Kampala, Naivasha, Machakos e.t.c.
- They created security organs which improved on internal security e.g. IBEACO built a private army which was later used in the colonization of Uganda.
- They helped in the effective abolition of slave trade and establishments of legitimate trade.

- The Chartered companies protected Christian missionaries who were also colonial agents e.g. IBEACO'S private army always provided security to the Church Missionary society.
- Chartered companies also provided their home governments with information about the economic potential of east Africa e.g. IBEACO reported about the fertile soils of Uganda and the Kenya highlands which later attracted colonialists.
- They signed treaties with the local people that were later used by their home government to occupy E. Africa e.g. IBEACO signed treaties with the Baganda, Kikuyu and Masai.
- The chartered companies called on their home governments as a result of failure to administer e.g. when IBEACO ran bankrupt that called on the British government to take over.
- The traders only settled in areas where their colonial governments had economic interests so that it would be easy for the colonialists to settle with in East Africa.
- The rivalry between IBEACO and GEACO forced them to sign the Anglo - German agreement of 1890

(Heligoland treaty) which practically eroded the independence of E.Africa.

- Company officials strongly campaigned for the retention of their areas of influence e.g. captain Lugard Fredrick strongly supported Britain colonize Uganda because IBEACO had done all the underground work.

PROBLEMS FACED BY CHARTED COMPANIES / TRADERS IN EAST AFRICA.

- Tropical diseases e.g. malaria and Sleeping Sickness always claimed the lives of many traders making their work difficult.
- Harsh Climatic conditions e.g. too much rain, sunshine while some areas were too dry e.g. Taru desert in Kenya.
- Language barrier mainly because East Africa had many tribes which used different languages.
- Poor transport and communication in East Africa also hindered the work of the traders.
- Wild animals e.g. lions and leopards that were many at the time also made their work difficult.

- Frequent rebellions also frustrated the traders making their work difficult e.g. IBEACO faced resistance from Bunyoro, Masai, and Baganda.
- Geographical barriers e.g. Mountains, Lakes, Forests e.t.c made their movements very difficult.
- Theft of their property by the porters and guides also affected the work of the traders in the interior.
- Lack of funds i.e. the companies lacked a steady source of income to meet the costs of administration.
- Some of the African chiefs were reluctant to trade with the companies and they imposed heavy taxes.
- There was rivalry between the different companies of the Europeans e.g. IBEACO always rivaled GEACO.
- Lack of man power i.e. the companies lacked effective and good administrators because the company officials were few.
- The companies also lacked enough supplies e.g. food, drugs and clothes because it was difficult to get them from their home government.
- The companies also lacked proper communication between their headquarters in Europe and their headquarters in East Africa.

- The companies always faced strong opposition from the Swahili and Arab slave traders who were always armed with guns.
- IBEACO involved itself in the politics /religious wars in Buganda and this strained the company's budget because the wars were very expensive to fund.

SCRAMBLE AND PARTITION OF EAST AFRICA

- The word scramble refers to the rush by European powers to acquire colonies in East Africa.
- Partition refers to the division of East African territories among European countries i.e.
  - Uganda, Kenya and Zanzibar for Britain and
  - Tanganyika for Germany.

Reasons for the scramble and partition of East Africa

- Need for raw materials i.e. most Europeans nations wanted to control areas of cheap raw materials to feed their 'hungry' industries back home e.g. cash crops and minerals.

- There was the need to secure profitable market overseas for the European goods which had over flooded the European markets.
- There was need to secure areas where surplus capital would be invested i.e. the industrial revolution had generated a lot of wealth for the Europeans who wanted to set up plantations and exploit minerals.
- There was need to resettle the excess population in Europe especially the slaves who had become useless after the invention of machines.
- The strategic. Importance of River Nile also forced European powers to scramble for East Africa i.e. after Britain had occupied Egypt; she wanted to control all the countries through which R. Nile passed i.e. Uganda and Sudan while Kenya was to provide an in-let for Uganda at the coast.
- King Leopold's activities in Congo i.e. The Belgians had gained a lot of wealth from the minerals and forest resources in the Congo and this forced other European powers e.g. Germany and Britain to rush to E. A so as to exploit her resources.

- ❖ Mineral discovery in S. Africa in 1867 by the Dutch also forced other European powers to rush to E. Africa with the hope of exploiting minerals.
- ❖ The growth of nationalism in Europe created the need for international recognition and prestige among European countries i.e. a country with many colonies was considered great and superior.
- ❖ Power imbalance in Europe also created a need for colonies e.g. after the 1870—1871 Franco - Prussian war France lost her mineral rich provinces of Alsace and Lorraine. This caused her to rush to Africa to compensate for her loss and similarly Germany and Britain could not sit back.
- ❖ The Berlin conference of 1884 — 1885 also increased the need for colonies by European powers i.e. it was a platform that was used to divide African territories among European super powers.
- ❖ The European powers had a desire of stamping out slave trade which they regarded as evil and a crime against humanity.
- ❖ European powers wanted to spread Christianity because they didn't want to see Africans go to hell. I.e.

E. Africa was seen as a place where seeds of Christianity would be sown.

❖ Europeans also wanted to civilize Africans who were considered backward and barbaric and this was to be done through the introduction to western Education.

COURSE OF THE PARTITION OF EAST AFRICA

- The partition of E.A was interestingly not done in E Africa but in Europe.
- The process began after the chancellor of Germany Otto Von Bismarck called the Berlin conference in 1884 and this is where much of the paper work was done.
- The process of partition went through three main stages.
  - Berlin conference (1884 – 1885)
  - 1st Anglo – German Agreement (1886)
  - 2nd Anglo – German Agreement (1890) popularly known as the Heligoland treaty.

BERLIN CONFERENCE;

- This conference was called by Otto Von Bismarck, the German chancellor. The conference came up with the following guidelines;

➢ No European power was to ally with any African country to frustrate colonialism.

➢ It was also agreed that all European powers should eliminate slave trade in their colonies.

➢ Each European country had to effectively occupy it's colony by developing it.

➢ It was also agreed that a paper map of E .Africa should be drawn to ease the partition.

➢ In case a colonial power wanted to extend its influence, it had to first inform other European countries to avoid clashes and misunderstandings.

➢ Congo was to be left to Belgium while France was to be compensated in West Africa.

➢ The conference accordingly gave Germany and Britain a free hand in East Africa.

THE EFFECTS / ROLES OF THE COFERENCE IN THE PARTITION OF E.AFRICA

- The Berlin conference increased the rivalry among European powers i.e. they became more hungry for colonies.
- The Berlin conference practically divided East Africa among the Germans and the British hence doing away with the independence of East Africa.
- The Berlin conference helped in the eradication of slave of slave trade leading to the introduction of legitimate trade.
- The conference stimulated the development of Infrastructures in East Africa e.g. The Uganda railway ,Schools, Hospitals, Roads e.t.c
- The Berlin conference also speeded up to the colonization process of East Africa i.e. European powers started sending missionaries, explorers, traders e. t. c
- The conference stimulated the formation of chartered companies e.g. IBEACO and GEACO which exploited E. Africa resources.
- The conference also led to an influx of white settlers because it gave permission to the whites to start coming to Africa.

- ❖ The conference also prevented any co-operation between European power and any African states.
- ❖ The conference totally neglected the Africans yet what was going to be decided was to affect the Africans and their grand children.
- ❖ The Berlin conference also neglected tribal boundaries e.g. some tribes like the Samia and luo are in Kenya and Uganda and this created disunity among the Africans.

THE ANGLO-GERMAN CONFLICTS (1885-1890)

- After the 1884-85 Berlin conference, Britain and Germany started sending traders into East Africa.
- They were to acquire necessary raw materials for their industries and also prepare the way for colonial agents.
- Britain sent the British East Africa Association (B.E.A.A) and Germany sent the German East Africa Association (G.E.A.A).

Causes of the Anglo-German conflicts between 1885-1890

- ➢ A conflict arose between the two groups of traders over an area of about 800 miles inland from the coast.

- German East Africa Association took over the area yet British East Africa Association had reached an agreement with Sultan Bargash to trade in the mainland.
- Germany was afraid that Britain might join with the British South Africa company to force her out of Tanganyika.
- The British were also afraid that the German East Africa Association might link up with Uganda and push them out of Kenya.
- Between 1886 – 1890, there was a race for the total control of Uganda between the British and the Germans.
- In 1890, Karl Peters signed a friendship agreement with Kabaka Mwanga of Buganda which worried the British.
- Fredrick Jackson tried to secure a similar treaty for the British but Kabaka Mwanga refused.
- When it was rumoured that the German commissioner would visit Buganda, the British anxiety increased/heightened.

- Between 1887 and 1889, the Mahdi of Sudan besieged Emin Pasha who was the Egyptian Equatorial Province Governor.
- Karl Peters had that Fredrick Jackson was on the way to relieve the siege which would mean that the area would be taken over by Britain.
- However, Henry Morton Stanley rescued Emin Pasha before Karl Peters or Fredrick Jackson arrived.
- In 1888, the Imperial British East Africa Company (I.B.E.A.C.O) was given a charter/license to protect all areas of British interest.

How were the conflicts solved?

- Negotiations between the British and Germans were used to solve the conflicts.
- These involved the 1st Anglo-German agreement of 1886 and 2nd Anglo-German agreement of 1890.
- By 1886, the Sultan's area of control was limited to a ten mile coastal strip and the rest of the area was to be in the hands of the Europeans.
- The sultan also acquired the coastal towns of Brava, Kismayo and Merca.

- The German sphere of influence was to consist of the area beyond the ten mile coastal strip from river Ruvuma in the south and river Umba on the foothills of Mt. Kilimanjaro.
- The British sphere of influence comprised of the area north of river Umba and north of river Kilimanjaro.
- Modern Kenya was to be a German enclave because it was smaller than Tanganyika.
- However, the 1886 agreement did not cater for Uganda which led to another scramble.
- This resulted into the 2nd Anglo-German Agreement of 1890 popularly known as the Heligoland Treaty.
- Britain got Uganda and Uganda received Heligoland in compensation.
- The ten mile coastal strip that originally belonged to the Sultan was given to the Germans.
- The Germans gave up with their conflicts with the British after getting the coastal strip.
- Zanzibar, Pemba and Mafia were to be under the British.
- The area from river Umba was extended westwards across Lake Victoria.
- In 1894, Uganda was declared a British protectorate.

- The Uganda-Tanganyika border was extended westwards to the Congo border.
- The 1890 agreement virtually solved the conflicts between the Germans and the British.
- Effective occupation by the colonial governments ended the conflicts.

Effects of the Anglo-German conflicts

- ✓ The conflicts led to the partition of East Africa i.e. Uganda and Kenya for Britain and Tanganyika for the Germans.
- ✓ The partition of East Africa completely eroded the independence of the East African societies.
- ✓ The boundaries of the East African countries were clearly drawn to include some parts of Congo.
- ✓ New forms of administration were introduced in E.Africa i.e. indirect rule by the British and direct rule by the Germans.
- ✓ The conflicts increased tension between the Germans and the British by causing a lot of anxiety and mistrust from each group.

- ✓ These conflicts led to diplomatic relations which led to the signing of the 1st and 2nd Anglo-German agreements.
- ✓ The Sultan of Zanzibar completely lost control over the coastal strip of land to the Europeans.
- ✓ There was increased European influx into East Africa.
- ✓ Uganda developed into a protectorate colony and Kenya became a settler colony.
- ✓ The British formed a strong army of the King's African Rifles (K.A.R) to prepare for any confrontation from the Germans in future.
- ✓ Colonial economic policies were introduced in East Africa e.g. forced labour and taxation.
- ✓ Africans lost their authority to the colonial masters and became subjects.

THE FIRST ANGLO – GERMAN AGREEMENT (1886)

- After the paper work in Berlin was done, the next major step in the actual partition of E.A was the signing to the 1st Anglo - German agreement of 1886.

- At first, Britain was reluctant to sign any agreements with Germany.
- Karl Peters had signed treaties with African chiefs like Mwanga of Buganda and the chief of the Wanga society but went ahead to sign the 1st agreement with the British.

Terms of the first Anglo – German agreement

- ❖ East Africa was to be divided into two from the coast up to Lake Victoria.
- ❖ The Southern part was to belong to German and the northern part was to belong to Britain.
- ❖ The islands of Zanzibar, Pemba, Mafia, Brava, and Mogadishu, all on the Indian Ocean were to belong to the sultan the Zanzibar.
- ❖ Both German and Britain were not to interfere with the area under the Sultan of Zanzibar whatsoever.
- ❖ Claims over the Kilimanjaro district were to be settled between the two powers because Britain had arrived first in the area before the Germans.

THE SECOND ANGLO – GERMAN AGREEMENT (1890)

It was signed in July 1890 and came to be known as the Heligoland treaty.

Terms of the Heligoland treaty

- Germany was to lose the Northern area i.e. the Wanga area (Western Kenya) to the British who would in turn lose the Kilimanjaro area.
- The Islands of Zanzibar, Mafia and Pemba were to be given to the British.
- Uganda and Kenya were to be confirmed as Britain spheres of influence.
- Uganda was to become a **protectorate** while Kenya was to become a **settler colony**.
- The agreement was to mark the end of political and commercial importance of Zanzibar since it had become part of the British sphere of influence.
- Colonial rule and economic policies like taxation, cash crop growing were to be introduced.

EFFECTS OF THE PARTITION OF E.AFRICA

- The partition of East Africa completely eroded the independence of the East African societies.
- The boundaries of the E.African countries were clearly drawn.

- ❖ Many people in E. Africa lost their land to the whites who introduced cash crops e.g. coffee, wheat, sisal.
- ❖ Many people lost their lives as they tried to resist colonial rule.
- ❖ The partition marked the end of slave trade and legitimate trade was introduced.
- ❖ The partition led to the formation of chartered companies e.g. IBEACO and GEACO to exploit East Africa's resources.
- ❖ African kings and chiefs lost their authority to the whites especially in Tanganyika.
- ❖ It led to the introduction of taxes e.g. gun and hut tax.
- ❖ The partition led to the development of infrastructures in East Africa e.g. Uganda railway.
- ❖ The partition increased the rivalry between Germany and Britain.
- ❖ The partition accelerated or increased missionary work in E.A.
- ❖ The partition resulted into the separation of people who previously belonged to one tribe e.g. the Samia in Uganda and Kenya, Masai in Kenya and Tanzania, Banyankole in Uganda and Rwanda.

- ❖ The partition also accelerated tribalism as the Europeans tended to support collaborators against resistors.
- ❖ Africans that previously grew crops for their own consumption were now forced to grow crops that they could not eat e.g. coffee, tea, cotton and sisal.
- ❖ The partition ended the long distance trade and led to the fall of trading empires of Mirambo, Nyungu ya mawe and Tippu –Tip.
- ❖ The partition led to the rise of a class of African collaborators who worshiped the white man e.g. Semei Kakungulu, Nuwa Mbaguta, Sir Apollo Kaggwa, Nabongo Mumia (Wanga).
- ❖ After the partition, the colonialists began a process of developing their colonies e.g. They constructed roads and railway lines to help out in the exploitation of East Africa's resources.
- ❖ New forms of administration were introduced in E.Africa i.e. indirect rule by the British and direct rule by the Germans.

METHODS USED BY THE BRITISH TO ESTABLISH THEIR RULE IN UGANDA.

- They used a number of methods / tactics / Techniques to achieve their goal of colonizing Uganda.
- In most cases, the method used always depended on each society's attitude.
- In most cases, more than one method was used.

❖ Singing of treaties; The treaties were later used to claim effective occupation e.g. 1900 Buganda agreement, 1901 Ankole agreement and 1902 Toro agreement.

❖ Use of force; in areas that were hostile to the British, direct military confrontation was used e.g. in Bunyoro and Acholi Land.

❖ Use of collaborators; These were opportunists who were used by the British to spread colonial rule to other areas e.g. Semei Kakungulu was used by the British to extend colonial rule to the Eastern parts of Uganda e.g. Busoga, Bukedi, Budaka, Bugisu and Budama.

❖ Divide and rule; This was used in areas where two or more unfriendly societies were encouraged to remain hostile to each other e.g. the British supported Buganda against Bunyoro.

❖ Intimidation and threats; These were used to scare off would be resistors e.g. Kabaka Mwanga of

Buganda and Omukama Kabalega of Bunyoro were exiled at the Seychelles island on the Indian Ocean.

- ❖ Ineffective rule; This method was used in areas where the British were not in a hurry to take over e.g. Karamoja region.
- ❖ Use of Missionaries: - These softened the hearts of Africans with wonderful preaching and they managed to convinced African chiefs to sign treaties e.g. in Buganda.
- ❖ Use of traders (chartered companies); they used IBEACO and it did a lot of ground work for the British e.g. it defeated rebellious societies, encouraged war between protestants and catholic in Buganda. All this created disunity among Africans which made colonialism easy.
- ❖ Use of explorers; These established good working relations with African chiefs and also provided the geographical information which was later used by the colonialists.
- ❖ Construction of military forts; These were set up in areas which had hostile communities e.g. Fort Patiko in Acholi land, Fort Portal in Western Uganda, and Fort Lugard in Old Kampala.

- ❖ Construction of infrastructure; These were for consolidations of colonial rule and for effective occupation of their areas of influence e.g. Uganda Railway.
- ❖ Gun - Boat diplomacy; Through this, the British would simply parade their weapons to scare off African resistors e.g. in areas like Busoga.
- ❖ Use of treachery / carrot stick diplomacy; In some cases, the British pretended to be friendly to the Africans only to turn around later e.g. they befriended Kabaka Mwanga but later sent him to exile.

EXTENSION OF COLONIAL RULE IN UGANDA

- ❖ In July 1890, the Heligoland treaty was signed between the British and Germans.
- ❖ It was to define the boarders of Uganda, Kenya and Tanzania.
- ❖ In 1894, Uganda was declared a British protectorate which confirmed British control over Uganda.
- ❖ In December 1895, the Busoga chief Wakholi signed an agreement with the British to bring Busoga under the British protectorate.

- In March 1900, the Buganda agreement was signed and it confirmed and Buganda as a British Protectorate.
- In June 1900, the Toro agreement was signed with Omukama Daudi Kasagama to confirm Toro as a British protectorate.
- In August 1901, the Ankole agreement was signed with Prime Minister Nuwa Mbaguta and this made Ankole part of the protectorate.
- No agreement was signed with Bunyoro because of Kabalega's hostility to the British.
- The British used mercenaries from Buganda, Busoga, Sudan to crush Kabalega's resistance.
- Buganda agents like John Miti was sent to Bunyoro to help the British in administrating.
- During the same period, the British were also using collaborators e.g. Semei Kakungulu to extend colonial rule to Eastern Uganda.
- By 1901, Kakungulu had annexed Bugishu, Bukedi, Budama, Teso, Budaka and Kumam areas.
- The British who had neglected Northern Uganda started opening up posts e.g. in Gulu in 1910, Lango in 1910, and Kitgum in 1912.

- In 1913, the British crushed the Lamogi rebellion and they established their rule in Acholi land.
- In 1913, military rule was established in Karamoja.
- By 1914, West Nile region was annexed to the British protectorate from Sudan.
- By 1920, almost the whole of Uganda was under British rule except for Karamoja which was still under military rule.
- Karamoja only became part of the British protectorate in 1926**.**

PROBLEMS FACED BY THE BRITISH IN THEIR EXTENSION OF COLONIAL RULE.

- There were so many revolts/ rebellions against British rule e.g. Lamogi rebellion in Acholi (1911 – 1912) Nyangire rebellion in Bunyoro (1907) and Nyabinji rebellion in Ankole.
- In societies where there was no central authority e.g. in Northern and eastern Uganda the British faced a problem of creating such authority.
- The Kiganda model of administration failed miserably because most areas did not have centralized governments.

- ❖ Most of the Baganda agents that were used by the British were simply opportunists e.g. Semei Kakungulu, Sir Apollo Kaggwa.
- ❖ There was language barrier because each tribe in Uganda had its own language yet a few people by that time had learnt English.
- ❖ Poor transport and communication facilities i.e. Roads to Northern and North Eastern Uganda were very poor.
- ❖ They faced a problem of introducing a uniform economic activity in Uganda e.g. Ankole rejected cash crop growing.
- ❖ Religious wars that were fought in Buganda created confusion and insecurity in the protectorate.
- ❖ Diseases like malaria and sleeping sickness made in work to the colonial administration very difficult.
- ❖ They failed to understand the cultures of the people of Uganda and this led to resistance from the local people.
- ❖ The cost of administration was very high e.g. they had to pay the collaborators e.g. Semei Kakungulu.

- ❖ Lack of manpower also hindered the work of British administration e.g. they only had 40 trained white personnel to supervise the whole of Uganda.
- ❖ The Baganda who first co-operated with the British later turned against them and started making their work difficult e.g. in 1896, Kabaka Mwanga ordered for the killing of the 30 Uganda Martyrs.
- ❖ With the growth to Nationalism in Uganda, political parties were formed which always demanded for independence e.g. D.P and U.P.C.
- ❖ The 1900 Buganda agreement caused more problems because it gave land that had previously belonged to Bunyoro to Buganda.

COLONIAL ADMINISTRATIVE POUCLES

- ➢ After acquiring territories in East Africa, the British and Germans used different methods to administer.
- ➢ The British used **Indirect rule** while the Germans employed the **Direct rule** system.

NATURE OF INDIRECT RULE

- This was a colonial administrative method that was used by the British during the period of colonialism particularly in Uganda.
- On top of the administration was the colonial secretary, who was based in London.
- He was the minister in charge of colonies.
- Below him was the governor based in the respective colony.
- For Uganda, Entebbe was the Headquarter.
- Below the governor were the provincial and district commissioners heading every province.
- These took orders from the governor and worked under his close supervision.
- All the above mentioned posts were strictly reserved for the British or Whites.
- Blacks or Africans were involved in administration at the lower levels.
- The county chiefs (Ssaza chiefs) followed in line and took orders from provincial commissioners and passed them on to the sub-county chiefs (Gombolola chiefs).

- Below the sub county chiefs were the parish chiefs (muluka chiefs), who would in turn pass on the orders to the sub parish chiefs (Omutongole).
- Below the sub parish chiefs were the village headsmen (Abakulu be kyalo) who would then pass on the orders to the common man.
- All the chiefs from county level up to the village headsman formed a Chain of command.
- Indirect rule was based on the assumption that every area had to be centralized like Buganda.
- When the system failed in Northern and Eastern Uganda, the British used Buganda agents e.g. Semei Kakungulu to introduce the Kiganda model of administration in those areas.
- The local chiefs were in charge of tax collection, mobilizing people for public work and presiding over local courts of law.
- The whites would only come in case of resistances from the Africans and they were also in charge of planning the economy of the colony.

WHY THE BRITISH APPLIED INDIRECT RULE IN UGANDA

- ❖ The system was economically cheap i.e. it needed very few whites and the chiefs were paid very little or nothing at all.
- ❖ The British feared opposition from Africans because they believed that the traditional chiefs were respected by their subjects.
- ❖ The British wanted the Africans chiefs to act as shock absorbers, in case of any opposition from the Africans it would appear as if the orders came from Africans .
- ❖ The British admired the Kiganda model of administration; hence they did not want to destroy the traditional systems of governance.
- ❖ The traditional chiefs understood their people better e.g. in terms of Language, customs and culture.
- ❖ This system had already been successful elsewhere e.g. India, Egypt and Nigeria hence they needed to use it in Uganda.
- ❖ The system of indirect rule was intended by the British to preserve and protect and develop the

Africans' political and social institutions in order to prepare the Africans for independence.

- ❖ Indirect rule was used to reward societies which had collaborated with the British e.g. Buganda was left with its independent institution.
- ❖ The British also wanted to look unique because they never wanted to use the same system as their enemy, the Germans who used direct rule while the French had used assimilation.
- ❖ The African chiefs were also considered to be immune to the African problems e.g. Diseases, wild animals, harsh climate e.t.c.
- ❖ Uganda was too big yet whites were very few and therefore could not administer the whole of Uganda.
- ❖ Some areas were too remote with poor roads, no hospitals, no schools and therefore the British feared for their lives in such areas.
- ❖ The existence of the centralized system of the administration also called for the use of indirect rule because the British didn't want to create new centers the power.

EFFECTS OF INDIRECT RULE

- ❖ The system created a class of ambitious Africans who were more than willing to do anything to please the British. These later became collaborators e.g. Semei Kakungulu, Sir Apollo Kaggwa.
- ❖ The system encouraged tribalism because each society was administered at tribal level and therefore unity against foreign rule was difficult.
- ❖ The British tended to favour Buganda over other areas because they greatly admired the Kiganda model of administration compared to other regions' systems of administration.
- ❖ Indirect rule enabled the British to effectively exploit Uganda's resources e.g. the Africans were forced to grow cash crops, provide labour on European farms and pay taxes.
- ❖ Serious education for the Africans was totally neglected and many were given elementary education. As a result, many became clerks, secretaries, office messengers and interpreters.
- ❖ Indirect rule created a class of conservative Africans who were totally against any new idea and these felt so comfortable under British rule. E.g. Semei Kakungulu.

- ❖ Indirect saved Uganda from becoming a settler colony because there was no need for the British to come, dominate and finally settle here because the African chiefs were doing the job well.
- ❖ Indirect rule brought religion into the politics of Buganda and Uganda at large. E.g. in Buganda, the Katikiro (prime minister) had to be a protestant.
- ❖ Indirect rule tended to favour Protestants compared to other religious groups in Uganda.
- ❖ The system dehumanized and demoralized African chiefs i.e. many were not pleased with the changes but they had no option or to lose their leadership posts.
- ❖ The African chiefs earned themselves hatred, dislike and disrespect from their subjects who looked at them as traitors who had “sold” them to the British colonialists.
- ❖ Indirect rule greatly affected the spread of Islamic faith because many people became Christians as the British tended to favour Christians particularly protestants.
- ❖ Indirect led to the loss of land by the Africans as a result of the British introducing the forceful growing of cash crops.

- ❖ Indirect rule led to the a lot of suffering on the side of the Africans as many were left in poverty after losing their land to the British, paying heavy taxes and receiving poor education systems.
- ❖ Indirect rule led to the outbreak of resistances against the whites as a result of the Africans getting fed up of forced cash crop growing, payment of heavy taxes and loss of independence e.g. Lamogi rebellion in Acholi land.

BRITISH COLONIAL ECONOMIC POLICIES

- ➢ After acquiring and establishing their rule in Uganda and Kenya the British carried out a number of economic and social policies which helped them maintain their stay in East Africa.

The economic policies included the following;

- ❖ Agriculture: the British introduced compulsory growing of cash crops in order to make Africans meet their own costs of administration e.g. Kenneth Borup introduced cotton in 1905.
- ❖ Taxation: the Africans were introduced to a new system of paying taxes in cash form, a system that was

totally new to them. Hut and gun tax became compulsory.

- ❖ Industrialisation: the British destroyed traditional industries to make Africans totally dependent on European made goods. They only set up small processing plants like ginneries to reduce on the bulk of raw materials for export.
- ❖ Forced labour: Africans were forced to provide labour on large plantations, and in the construction of roads, railways, ports and harbours.
- ❖ Land alienation: Africans lost a lot of their land to the white settlers in the Kenyan highlands and to the construction of transport lines, schools, hospitals yet no compensation was made.
- ❖ Transport: Several murram roads were constructed within Uganda and vehicles were introduced. The Uganda railway was also constructed from Mombasa and it reached Kampala in 1931.
- ❖ Education: the education given to the Africans was based on the western syllabi and did not provide solutions to African problems. Missionaries were at first in charge but later on, the colonial gov't took over.

- ❖ Health: better health services were introduced and missionaries did a commendable job. E.g. the white fathers built Nsambya hospital, the CMS built Mengo hospital.
- ❖ Introduction of a currency: this was introduced to replace the old system of barter trade. First cowrie shells were used then Indian rupees and later coins. These were later followed by banking.
- ❖ Urbanization: trading centers, towns and big cities were all developed especially along the railway lines. E.g. Mombasa, Nairobi, Nakuru, Kampala, Tororo, Mbale and Kasese.

  N.B Where the Africans gained from the colonial economic policies, it was by accident and not design.

Effects of the British colonial economic policies

- Due to urbanization, the Africans were segregated against and they were in most cases required to be in the rural areas to grow cash crops. E.g. in Kenya, restrictions were issued through the Kipande system or national identity cards for only the Africans.

- The introduction of a currency system meant that Africans started paying taxes in form of cash which was very new to them.
- Africans became prisoners on their own land through forced cash crop growing, forced taxation policies and restricted movements in their own motherland.
- Africans became increasingly dissatisfied with the colonialists and they started demanding for their independence through rebellions e.g. Mau Mau rebellion in 1952, Nandi resistance in 1895.
- Literacy was wide spread through the introduction of western education but it was not of any assistance to the local people because they only trained as clerks, secretaries e.t.c…
- People in Uganda started growing crops that they were not going to eat e.g. cotton, coffee, tea.
- With the development of many roads and the Uganda railway, many areas were effectively exploited by the British e.g. Buganda, Busoga, Bugisu and Kikuyu land in Kenya.
- Africans lost a lot of their land to the white settlers who introduced cash crop growing e.g. in the 1900

Buganda agreement, the Baganda lost the crown land to the British yet it was the most fertile.

- Heavy taxation and land alienation forced many Africans to suffer with poverty because they had to work very hard to pay the taxes yet they never had land to grow their crops for sale.
- Improvement in the transport sector meant that business was improved in the protectorate because it eased the movement of raw materials and business men.
- Traditional industries like bark cloth making, greatly declined as the Africans were forced to depend on European made items like clothes.
- Better medical services were provided with the construction of hospitals like Nsambya and Mengo and this reduced on deaths as a result of tropical diseases e.g. malaria, sleeping sickness.
- Africans were taught new farming systems like plantation farming which replaced the traditional system of subsistence agriculture. Dairy farming was also introduced in the Kenya highlands.

- Africans got jobs on European farms, public road works and on the Uganda railway and this helped some to improve on their standards of living.
- Many urban centers sprung up as a result of development of schools, Uganda railway, hospitals e.g. Kampala, Nairobi, Eldoret, Kisumu, Mbale, and Tororo.

ESTABLISHMENT OF GERMAN RULE IN TANGANYIKA

Just like British rule, the Germans established their rule by using several methods which included;

- Use of force; this involved direct military confrontation with societies that tried to resist German rule e.g. the Hehe, Abushiri, Ngoni, Maji Maji were all defeated through use of force.
- Treaty signing; Karl Peters, a German trader and imperialist was instrumental in signing of agreements e.g. he signed with chiefs of Usagara, Uzigua and Usambara.
- Use of collaborators; these were used to spread German rule in Tanganyika e.g. Chief Marere of Sangu and Mangi Mandela of Kilimanjaro.

- Intimidation and threats; these were used to scare off those who wanted to rebel. Resistors were severely beaten, beheaded, or hanged e.g. even after chief Mkwawa of the Hehe had shot himself, the Germans cut off his head and sent it to Berlin (Germany).
- Use of traders and trading companies; e.g. Karl Peters and his trading company-GEACO. These funded the German administration and provided the initial man power.
- Development of infrastructure; several transport networks were constructed like roads and railway lines in order to conform to the doctrine of effective occupation and to enable German consolidation of colonial rule e.g. in 1891, a railway line was built connecting the coast to lake Tanganyika.
- Use of Christian missionaries; through their wonderful preachings, they softened the hearts and minds of the Africans which made them ready for colonial rule. E.g. the Berlin III missionaries.
- Use of explorers; these were used in the initial stages of colonialism e.g. Jacob Erhadt drew a sketch map of East Africa and Dr. Livingstone reported about

slave trade and all these called for European need to come to East Africa.

- Construction of military posts; these were mainly put up by Karl Peters and they totaled to eight e.g. in Uluguru, Usagara, Uvinza and these were later used by German administrators.
- Divide and rule; this was mainly used in areas where Africans were rivaling each other for supremacy e.g. Karl Peters used Arabs to fight Abushiri soldiers who were fellow Arabs.
- Use of gifts and Incentives; such were used in areas where collaborators helped the Germans extend colonial rule e.g. Chiefs of Usambara, Usagara were all given gifts to accept colonial rule.
- Use of treachery; this system was used in a way that the Germans pretended to befriend African chiefs but later turned against them e.g. Karl Peters signed treaties of friendship with chiefs of Uvinza, Usambara but later the Germans replaced them with the Akidas and Jumbes.

DIRECT RULE IN TANGANYIKA

- This was the German system of colonial administration that was used in Tanganyika.
- Direct rule involved the Germans directly in the administration of their colony.
- Under this system, the traditional chiefs lost their power and authority to the Akidas and Jumbes, who were Africans but of Asian origin from the coast.
- The system was dictatorial and ruthless and hence it led to a lot of resentment from the Africans.

WHY THE GERMANS APPLIED DIRECT RULE

❖ The Germans believed that it was the only system through which they could effectively administer Tanganyika.

❖ They also believed that it was the only way that they could effectively exploit resources within Tanganyika.

❖ The Germans had used force to take over many parts of Tanganyika and therefore soldiers had to be used so that Africans wouldn't easily revolt.

❖ The Germans wanted to impose their superior culture over the Africans and this would involve imposing their culture and legal system.

- The Germans were also a proud people and therefore used this system to stand high and above the Africans.
- The Germans had suffered early revolts and therefore had to bring in the harsh Akidas and Jumbes to tame the Africans.
- In many societies, there were no chiefs and where they existed they were not faithful or powerful enough and therefore the Germans had no one to entrust authority with.
- They opted for this system because they had enough manpower to man all departments and thus saw no need to recruit Africans in colonial administration.
- The Germans also feared the expenses of training Africans before they could takeover administration because this could strain their budget.
- The Germans were very selfish and didn't want to share the exploited resources with the Africans and that is why they used direct rule.
- The Germans also used direct rule because of their inexperience in colonial administration because they had just started acquiring colonies.

❖ The Germans also feared using indirect rule that was being used by their rivals (British) because this was going to increase rivalry and competition among them.

HOW DIRECT RULE WORKED/THE NATURE OF DIRECT RULE

- At the top was the Governor who was the head of the colony, stationed at Dar-es-salaam and in most cases a soldier
- The Governor had wide powers and authority and was directly answerable to the colonial minister in Berlin (Germany).
- In 1904, there was the Governor's council that was set up to advise the Governor.
- For efficient administration, the Germans divided Tanganyika into districts and by 1914, they were twenty two.
- Each district was under a district officer called Berzirksamtmann, with a police force and a small army to maintain law and order.
- District officers acted as judges and appointed chiefs to preside over courts and administer punishments on

their behalf. They were also the highest court of appeal.

- Districts were further divided into counties, which were further split into sub-counties and sub-counties into villages of 20,000 to 30,000 people.
- Areas that showed hostility to German rule, were put under military rule e.g. by 1914, the two districts of Iringa and Mahenge were under military rule because they were chaotic.
- The Governor, district officers, and members of the Governor's council were all whites. Therefore the whites dominated the top positions and the Africans were left to rule at the lower levels.
- Below the district officers were the Swahili Arabs called Akidas and below the Akidas were the Jumbes who were in charge of the villages.
- Akidas and Jumbes were in charge of tax collection, supervision of cotton schemes and public works. They were also supposed to appoint and dismiss junior chiefs and presided over over local courts of law.
- Many local chiefs were stripped of their powers and were replaced by Akidas and Jumbes and in areas

where no chiefs existed, the Germans just appointed the Akidas in place.

- These turned out to be very harsh and brutal to fellow Africans and in the end, they made German administration very unpopular.
- German administration was characterized by mal-administration, cruel methods of tax collection and forced labour on road construction communal cotton growing.
- Areas that co-operated with the Germans, they were left with their local chiefs e.g. in Nyamwezi land but these chiefs were made Akidas and therefore served the Governor.
- In some areas, puppet chiefs were put into authority to promote German interests e.g. in Usambara after the death of chief Samboja and in Unyanyembe after the death of chief Isike.
- In their administration, the Germans were arrogant, and isolated themselves from the Africans which caused a lot of rebellions from the Africans e.g. maji-maji revolt.

- This system of administration attracted many German settlers who also influenced the colonial government policy against Africans.
- In some areas where the societies were organized, the Germans used some indirect rule and left the Africans to rule e.g. among the Chagga.
- German rule came to an end in 1919 when the League of Nations granted Britain authority over Tanganyika because Germany was being punished for causing World War 1 (1914 - 1918).

Effects of direct rule in Tanganyika

❖ Many African chiefs were stripped of their powers and replaced by the harsh Akidas and Jumbes.

❖ Africans who were co-operative and loyal to the Germans were appointed as Akidas.

❖ Direct rule brewed wide spread rebellions as people rose up against the harsh Akidas and Jumbes rule. E.g. Maji-maji revolt, Abushiri revolt and Hehe rebellion.

❖ There was a rise in African nationalism because many people started organizing themselves into revolutionary movements to struggle for independence.

- ❖ Heavy taxation was introduced e.g. a hut tax 3 rupees and taxes were brutally collected as the German tried to fully exploit the Africans and maximize profits.
- ❖ There was forced cash crop growing introduced by the Germans e.g. they started forced cotton growing, which irritated the Africans.
- ❖ Africans lost large chunks of land to the German settlers who introduced plantation farming.
- ❖ People including chiefs were brutalized and humiliated as they were publicly flogged and beaten by the harsh Akidas and Jumbes.
- ❖ African cultures and customs were eroded and abused by the Akidas e.g. they always raped women when their husbands were working on cotton farms and they would also enter mosques with dogs.
- ❖ People were always in a state of suffering as there was wide spread discontent and resentment against the Akidas and Jumbes and generally the whole German administration.
- ❖ Christianity was wide spread as traditional beliefs and Islam greatly declined as a result of shrines being

burnt and churches widely built by German missionaries.

- ❖ There was heavy loss of lives and destruction of property as the Germans tried to suppress the many rebellions.
- ❖ Africans were forced to work for long hours on European farms and road works where they received little or no pay at all.
- ❖ Infrastructures were widely developed in Tanganyika to aid the exploitation of resources e.g. roads and railway lines were built.
- ❖ Famine broke out due to the unsettled life of the Africans and the German neglect of growing of food crops in favour of cash crops.
- ❖ African traders like the Nyamwezi were driven out of trade by the Germans who became the main trade controllers.
- ❖ Western civilization was promoted as a result of many schools that were constructed by the Germans.

BRITISH ADMINISTRATION IN TANGANYIKA (Changes introduced by the British after 1919)

- Having lost World War 1 (1914 - 1918), Germany was forced to surrender her overseas colonies to the League of Nations.
- Tanganyika became a mandated territory and the League of Nations mandated Britain to administer Tanganyika on her behalf in 1919.
- They began their administration of Tanganyika by appointing Sir Horace Byatt as a new British Governor and he was assisted by four members of the executive.
- In his administration, Byatt retained the Akidas and Jumbes and generally the whole German administration.
- He was later accused of failing to put Tanganyika back on a serious recovery track and he was thus replaced by a new governor, Sir Donald Cameron in 1925.
- Cameron embarked on developing Tanganyika and he started by instituting indirect rule to close the gap between the people and government, which had been created by the Germans.
- In 1926, he established the Native Authority Ordinance and set up legislative councils on which Africans were represented.

- Africans were empowered to collect taxes, administer justice and carry out some administrative duties e.g. they were made secretaries for the native affairs to supervise themselves.
- In 1926, Cameron established the Tanganyika Legislative Council comprising of thirteen official and seven unofficial members, to formulate new laws governing Tanganyika.
- However, Cameron frustrated Africans by not including them on the Legislative council yet settlers were included and Africans only participated in politics at a lower level.
- This later provoked the young mission educated people to rise against the British rule. This brought in many problems for the British who even failed to get labour when they badly needed it.
- The colonial government had to come in and regulate wages for the Africans to be protected at work.
- In order to win the support of the Africans, Cameron gave them land which had belonged to settlers and settlers were also stopped from buying big chunks of land to set up estates.

- Cameron also encouraged Africans to grow cash crops on their own shambas to improve their standards of living e.g. the Chagga grew Arabica coffee on the Kilimanjaro slopes while in Bukoba, they grew Robusta coffee.
- Transport was developed i.e. roads and railway lines were extended to productive areas e.g. the Tabora – Mwanza and Dar-es-salaam – Kigoma railway lines were built and repaired.
- Cameron also introduced poll tax on top of the hut tax that had been introduced by the Germans except that it was now collected by African chiefs and slightly reduced rates.
- Trade was developed within Tanganyika and with outside countries and Africans fully participated. E.g. the Dar-es-salaam – Kigoma railway line promoted trade with Belgian Congo.
- Cameron also developed the mining industry e.g. in Musoma, Mwanza and Geita, gold deposits were exploited and this increased government revenue.
- The British also developed the education sector and increased government funding of education e.g. in

1925, a department of education was set up and many schools were constructed.

- Ex – servicemen, who had participated in World War 1, were resettled and their problems were looked into. E.g. they were given land that previously belonged to white settlers.
- Slave trade that had persisted in Tanganyika was finally brought to an end in 1922.
- The young mission educated elites were allowed to form political parties e.g. the Tanganyika African Association (T.A.A) formed in 1919.

Revision questions

1. a) Why were different European powers interested in East Africa in the 2nd half of the 19th century?

b) What problems did they face in East Africa?

2. a) Why were European countries involved in the scramble and partition of East Africa?

b) What were the effects of colonization on the peoples of East Africa?

3. a) Describe the course of the partition of East Africa.

b) What were the effects of the partition of East Africa?

4. a) Describe the terms of 1884-1885 Berlin conference.
b) What was the role of the conference in the colonization of East Africa?

5. a) Why was the 2nd Anglo-German Agreement of 1890/Heligoland Treaty signed?
b) What were the results /effects/outcomes/consequences of this agreement?

6. a) Describe the methods used by the British to establish their rule in Uganda.
b) What problems did they encounter in Uganda?

7. a) Describe the British colonial economic policies.
b) How did these policies affect the people of Uganda up to independence?

8. a) How was colonial rule extended in Uganda up to 1920?

b) Describe the problems the British faced in the extension of colonial rule to other parts of Uganda.

9. a) How did Europeans acquire colonies in East Africa?
b) How were these colonies maintained?

10. a) Describe the British system of administration in Uganda up to 1914.
b) Why did the British apply it in Uganda?

11. a) Describe the nature of Indirect rule in Uganda OR How was indirect rule applied?
b) What were the effects of this system on Uganda?

12. a) Why did the Germans apply Direct rule in Tanganyika?
b) What problems did they face in the administration of Tanganyika?

13. a) Describe the German system of administration in Tanganyika before 1914.
b) What changes did the British make in the administration of Tanganyika between1919-1939?

14. a) How did the Germans gain control of Tanganyika between 1884 and 1890?

b) How did they administer the area up to 1914?

15. a) Explain the causes of the Anglo – German rivalry in East Africa.

b) What were the steps taken to end this rivalry?

16. a) What led to the Anglo – German conflict in East Africa during the 19th century?

b) Explain the effects of this conflict on the peoples of East Africa.

AFRICAN RESPONSE TO COLONIAL RULE

- The imposition of colonial rule in East .Africa did not go unchallenged.
- Africans responded to the loss of their independence in two ways;
    - Through Collaboration and
    - Resistance.

COLLABORATION

- This is where African societies or individuals co-operated with the colonial powers in the establishment of colonial rule.
- Societies that collaborated included Buganda, Toro and Ankole.
- Individuals included Semei Kakungulu (Buganda), Laibon Lenana (Maasai), Nabongo Mumia (Wanga), and Nuwa Mbaguta (Ankole).

Reasons for collaboration

❖ Some societies collaborated with the Europeans in order to get military support against their enemies e.g. Toro and Buganda collaborated with the British to get weapons to fight Kabalega of Bunyoro.

❖ Some individuals collaborated because they wanted to get employment from the Europeans e.g. Semei Kakungulu, Sir Apollo Kaggwa e.t.c.

❖ Some societies collaborated because they had been hit by natural calamities and therefore could not stage any resistance against the Whiteman e.g. the Chagga and Maasai had been hit and weakened by famine, small pox and rinder pest.

- Others looked at collaboration in line with civilization, modernity and Christianity. Therefore they wanted their areas to be developed by the Europeans e.g. Kabaka Muteesa 1 of Buganda.
- Some Africans were blind folded by gifts and simple presents from Europeans e.g. bibles, clothes and rosaries which forced them to collaborate.
- Some Africans collaborated due to the fear of the military strength of the colonial powers i.e. the Europeans had the maxim gun yet Africans were at a disadvantage with spears, arrows and stones.
- Due to missionary influence, some societies collaborated e.g. Buganda where many people were converted to Christianity they ended up collaborating.
- Some individual collaborators e.g. Semei Kakungulu and Sir Apollo Kaggwa were simply opportunities i.e. they were after material gains from the Europeans e.g. land, titles like Sir.
- Some societies collaborated because their rivals and Neighbours had resisted e.g. once Bunyoro resisted, Toro and Buganda collaborated.

- ❖ Some societies collaborated out of prestige e.g. Muteesa 1 of Buganda wanted to be recognized for working with the British or the white people.
- ❖ Some African societies had been terrorized by their leaders which forced a few individuals to collaborate with the Europeans e.g. Nuwa Mbaguta of Ankole had been terrorized in his childhood days by Ntare IV.
- ❖ Some societies wanted to strengthen their diplomatic ties and relationship with the whites e.g. Buganda and Ankole wanted to trade with the British.
- ❖ The nature of societies also led to collaboration e.g. the Baganda were known to be friendly and hospitable hence they collaborated with the British.
- ❖ The failure of resistances also led to collaboration e.g. when Mwanga was defeated by the British, the Baganda decided to collaborate.
- ❖ The direction or route taken by European invaders also determined African reaction e.g. in Buganda visitors who entered from the South were warmly welcomed. Since missionaries came from Tanganyika in the south, the Baganda collaborated with them.

SEMEI KAKUNGULU

- Semei Lwakilenzi Kakungulu was born in Kooki around 1870.
- He grew up as a page at the Kabaka's palace in Buganda.
- With the growing influence of the missionaries at the Kabaka's court, Kakungulu found himself so close to the British.
- He was converted to Christianity and christened Semei.
- During the 1888 – 1890 religious wars, Kakungulu joined hands with Christians to topple Kalema and the Muslims who had taken control of Mengo – Buganda's capital.
- His political career begun to take shape in 1890, when he decided to ally/collaborate with the British for personal gains.

WHY KAKUNGULU COLLABORATED WITH THE BRITISH

- He participated in the 1888 – 1890 religious wars in Buganda on the side of Protestants who emerged

victorious and this marked the beginning of his collaborating carrier.

- The growing influence of the missionaries also forced Kakungulu to collaborate. This was because he had been converted to Christianity and this forced him to ally with the British.
- Kakungulu was an opportunist who expected material rewards from the British e.g. old clothes and employment, land e.t.c.
- Because of his humble origin, Kakungulu wanted to earn himself fame and recognition from the Baganda and Uganda at large.
- Kakungulu was also convinced that the best way of fighting Buganda's enemies e.g. Bunyoro was to collaborate with the British.
- Kakungulu also had serious ambition for power and leadership e.g. he at one time crowned himself Kyabazinga of Busoga to satisfy his appetite for power.
- Kakungulu's failure to get a post in the Buganda government also forced him to collaborate with the British e.g. Sir Apollo Kaggwa beat him to the post of Katikiro (Prime Minister).

- Kakungulu was also interested in developing Buganda and he believed that through collaboration with the British, Buganda would develop.
- The willingness of the British to tap the administrative potential in him also brought Kakungulu close to the British hence his collaboration.
- Kakungulu also wanted to use his British connections to extend Buganda's influence to the neighbouring areas e.g. Busoga, Bukedi, Budaka e.t.c.
- It was also part of the British indirect rule system to look for the brave Africans to use as "tools" in the extension of colonial rule hence leading to Kakungulu's collaboration.
- Kakungulu also collaborated out of ignorance i.e. he didn't know the intensions of the British.
- Due to Mwanga's harsh rule, Kakungulu was also forced to collaborate with the British e.g. Mwanga was against the British yet Kakungulu wanted to be their ally.
- All the above reforms earned Kakungulu a lot of admiration from the British but this was short lived.

- In 1901 his headquarters at Budaka were attacked and taken over by the British, forcing Kakungulu to withdraw to Nabumali.
- Kakungulu also suffered a series of demotions e.g. was demoted from being the Kabaka of Bukedi to county Chief at Mbale.
- In 1923, Kakungulu was forced to retire on pension of three thousand pounds and this greatly demoralized and frustrated Kakungulu.
- Kakungulu later joined a religious sect called **Abamalaki** and opposed anything western e.g. medicine.
- In 1925, Kakungulu died a disappointed man and was buried in Mbale after failing to realize his dream of creating an empire for himself.

Effects of Kakungulu's resistance

- **He** helped the British to extend colonial rule to Eastern Uganda particularly in Busoga, Bugisu, Teso, Bukedi and Kumam.
- **He** convinced the fellow Baganda to accept British rule as a way of securing military help against their traditional enemies-the Banyoro.

- ❖ Kakungulu built administrative posts in Eastern Uganda, which the British later used as their bases e.g. in Mbale, Budaka, and Nabumali.
- ❖ Kakungulu built several roads which eased the mobility of colonial armies and administrators e.g. he built Mbale-Tirinyi road, Bubulo-Nabumali road and Iganga-Budaka road.
- ❖ Kakungulu united the Basoga and assumed the presidency of the Busoga Lukiiko.
- ❖ He also trained many local rulers in the area which greatly helped in the extension of indirect rule.
- ❖ He set up medical centers wherever he established administrative posts like Budaka dispensary in Budaka.
- ❖ He planted many Mvule and mango trees in Eastern Uganda especially along the roads.
- ❖ Kakungulu introduced the Kiganda model of administration in Eastern Uganda.
- ❖ He divided these areas into counties and appointed Baganda agents and advisors there.
- ❖ Kakungulu also encouraged the growing of cash crops e.g. he introduced cotton growing in Busoga and coffee in Mbale.

- ❖ He encouraged the extension of the Uganda railway to Eastern Uganda to collect cotton and coffee and by 1930, it had reached Tororo.
- ❖ Kakungulu helped the British in the capture of Kabaka Mwanga and Omukama Kabalega in Lango on 4th April 1899. These two had given the British a lot of hard time because of resistances.

Sir Apollo Kaggwa

- ➢ He was a Muganda from the grasshopper (Nsenene) clan born around 1869.
- ➢ He trained as a page and served at Kabaka Muteesa I and Mwanga II's courts.
- ➢ Due to missionary influence. He converted to Protestantism and was christened Apollo.
- ➢ He started preaching Christianity and converted many people to Christianity.
- ➢ He was also very much influential in the construction of Namirembe cathedral.
- ➢ When Mwanga ascended to power, Kaggwa's religious involvements landed him into trouble and he narrowly survived the Christian killings of the martyrs in 1886.

- He became influential at the Kabaka's court and he rose to the post of Katikiro (Prime Minister).
- He was rewarded with over thirty square miles of land for his excellent work as Katikiro.
- During the religious wars, he worked closely with Captain Fredrick Lugard who armed the Protestants against Catholics.
- He also played a key role in the signing of the Portal – Mwanga agreement of 1893 which led to the declaration of a British protectorate over Uganda in 1894.
- He helped the British extend their influence in Uganda e.g. he supported British campaigns against Bunyoro.
- In 1898, he led a Ganda force against Sudanese mutineers from the north and he brought the situation to normal.
- He was one of the key players in the overthrow and deportation of Mwanga and Kabalega to Seychelles Island in 1899.
- He also helped the British to proclaim the young Daudi Chwa II as the new Kabaka of Buganda.

- Kaggwa became a regent to the new Kabaka and was involved in the signing of the 1900 Buganda agreement.
- The agreement caused him problems because the 'Bataka' accused him of selling Buganda's land to the British.
- He introduced judicial and financial reforms in Buganda and upheld the rights of the 'Lukiiko'.
- He campaigned for education and enrolled many boys and girls into mission schools.
- Kaggwa also asked the colonial government to grant many scholarships to many promising sons of Buganda to go and study abroad.
- He encouraged cotton growing, mulching of bananas and application of fertilizers.
- In 1902, he visited England to attend the coronation of Sir Edward VII and was Knighted 'SIR' as a reward for his good work for the British.
- He advocated for the spraying against tsetse flies around the shores of Lake Victoria and Sir Hesketh Bell did exactly that.

- Kaggwa later lost his influence at the Kabaka's court because Daudi Chwa had grown up and he also lost his popularity from the chiefs.
- He conflicted with the British due to his desire to protect African traditional institutions in Buganda.
- By this time, he had outlived his usefulness to the British and his own people.
- He angrily resigned in 1926 and died on 21st February 1927.

Nuwa Mbaguta of Ankole

- Nuwa Mbaguta was born in 1867.
- He lost all his parents as a tender age and was therefore left in the hands of his relatives.
- He later ran away from his relatives to go and live at Omugabe Ntare IV's court.
- As he grew up, he was taken to work as a page at the king's court at Mularagira.
- He didn't enjoy his stay there and soon ran back to Ntare's palace.
- As a young man, he had the courage of entering the Omugabe's bedroom and he got praises for this courage.

- Mbaguta became a fearless wrestler and was nicknamed ‘Kitinwa’ meaning the ‘feared one’.
- This soon earned him a lot of admiration from Omugabe and he became his favourite page.
- He was made to join the trusted army unit of the Omugabe which helped him rise to prominence.
- When the British showed up in Ankole, he became crusader of their propaganda and this further elevated him above other pages.
- In 1894, he signed a treaty of friendship and protection with the British on behalf of the Ntare IV.
- This made him a public figure in Ankole.
- He led the campaign to construct the road used by Sir Harry Johnston to move from Ankole to Toro.
- In 1900, he was made the Nganzi (Prime Minister) of Ankole by the British commissioner Sir Harry Johnston.
- In 1901, he signed another treaty with the British who pledged to support Ankole against Bunyoro.
- Ankole was allowed to maintain self government and was even rewarded with additional territories like Buhweju, Mpororo, Igara and Buziba.
- He encouraged education by building several schools in Ankole.

- He also built several churches which helped in the spread of Christianity.
- Mbaguta also encouraged the growing of cash crops like cotton and coffee.
- Due to his contribution to British rule, he was rewarded with an MBE (Member of the British Empire) honor.
- He retired in 1938 having done a lot for the British and his people.
- He died in 1944.

RESISTANCE TO COLONIAL RULE

- This is basically where African societies or individuals refused to co-operate with the whites in the imposition of colonial rule.
- Individual resistors included Kabaka Mwanga of Buganda, Omukama Kabalega of Bunyoro, and Laibon Sendeyo of the Maasai e.t.c.
- Large scale resistances included Maji- Maji rebellion in southern Tanganyika, Abushiri revolt along the coast in Tanganyika, Nandi resistance in Kenya, Mau- Mau in Kenya, and Lamogi revolt in northern Uganda.

REASONS FOR RESISTANCE

- African societies wanted to preserve their independence e.g. Bunyoro, Nandi, Hehe.
- The imposition of colonial rule had interrupted territorial expansion of some societies e.g. Kabalega of Bunyoro crushed with the British because they wanted to check on his ambition of expanding his Kingdom to Toro, Bunyoro, and Ankole e.t.c
- Colonial economic policies such as forced labor, compulsory growing of cash crops e.g. Maji Maji rebellion was as a result of forced cotton growing by the Germans.
- Some societies resisted because colonial rule interfered with their economic interests e.g. Arabs and Swahili traders resisted the abolition of Slave trade leading to the Abushiri rebellion.
- Presence of able leaders also led to rebellion e.g. Kabalega of Bunyoro, Chief Mkwawa of the Hehe, Prophet Kinjikitile who led Maji Maji, Mau Mau led by General China.
- Land alienation also led to resistances i.e. Europeans forcefully grabbed African land to introduce the growing of cash crops e.g. Mau Mau in Kenya was

as a result of the Kikuyu losing their fertile Kenyan highlands.

- Heavy taxation also led the rebellions with in East Africa e.g. the British introduced hut and gun tax which left Africans in poverty.
- The method used to acquire lands also determined the mode of reaction e.g. the British used force in Bunyoro and Lango hence leading to rebellions.
- Religious propaganda and superstition also led to rebellions e.g. Maji- Maji fighters were miss-led by prophet Kinjikitile while the Nandi were encouraged by Kimnyole's Prophecies.
- Other resisted because their neighbours who in most cases were their enemies, had collaborated with whites e.g. Bunyoro could not cooperate with the British because the Baganda had done so.
- Other resisted because they were sure of their military strength e.g. Kabalega and Mau- Mau militants believed that they were too strong for the Europeans.
- Some societies resisted cultural and religious imperialism of the colonialists e.g. Arabs and Swahili traders wanted to defend Islam leading to the Abushiri rebellion.

- Segregation and harsh rules by the Europeans also led to rebellions e.g. in Kenya, all Africans who were to move to urban centers were supposed to carry passes called Kipande (identity card).
- Some societies resisted as a result of European interference with their Political affairs e.g. Germans had replaced local chiefs with the Akidas and Jumbes leading to Maji Maji revolts.

N.B: Most of resistances in East Africa where suppressed by the Europeans because of the following reasons:

- False propaganda and superstition didn't work in favors of Africans e.g. Kinjikitile's magic water didn't provide immunity to German bullets.
- Africans where poorly organized e.g. they didn't make enough preparation before war and didn't have military training.
- Disunity among the various tribes also weakened the Africans e.g. the Chagga and Nyamwezi didn't join the Hehe rebellion.

- Some African fighters lacked persistence i.e. they would pull out living fellow Africans to suffer the might of the European forces.
- Superiority of European forces i.e. Africans depended on traditional weapons like spears, stones and outdated guns compared to Europeans who had modern guns like the Maxim gun.
- Some societies had been hit by natural calamities e.g. drought, famine, diseases e.t.c and this weakened their armies.
- Poor military tactics, African always fought in big groups while Europeans fought in troops which made it easy for the Europeans to defeat the Africans.
- Influence of collaborators: African resistance was weakened by collaborators e.g. Kakungulu who worked for British helped in the capture of Kabalega and Mwanga.
- The death of able leaders also left a power vacuum like chief Mkwawa of the Hehe was surrounded by German troops and he committed suicide by shooting himself while Chief Orkoiyot Koitale of the Nandi was also

murdered in cold blood and this left their people without leadership.

Case study of individual resistors

Kabaka Mwanga

- He was Muganda Prince born around 1866 to Kabaka Muteesa I of Buganda.
- Upon the death of his father, he came to power at a tender age of 18 on 24th October 1884.
- His early years in power were faced with many problems e.g. growing influence of European power, many religious groups in Buganda and Kabalega's desire to revive Bunyoro's glory.
- Unlike his father, Mwanga could not manage all these problems at his tender age.
- He was erratic, inexperienced and could not handle all the pressure.
- Arabs warned him of the problems he was to face if he worked with the whites.
- The rate of conversion to Christianity in Buganda worried Mwanga so much that he decided to deal with it decisively.

- In January 1885, he executed three CMS missionaries which marked the beginning of his campaign against Christianity.
- In November of 1885, he ordered the execution of Bishop Hannington in Busoga.
- On 3rd June 1886, he went ahead to execute thirty Christian converts at Namugongo for failing to denounce Christianity.
- In 1888, he made plans to capture all Christians and Muslims in Buganda and take them to an Island on Lake Victoria and starve them to death.
- The plan was unearthed by the Christians and Muslims who started plotting Kabaka Mwanga.
- In October 1888, a combined force of Christians and Muslims overthrew Mwanga.
- He was replaced by his brother Kiwewa.
- The Muslims convinced Kiwewa to accept circumcision and convert to Islam but he refused on grounds that a Kabaka is not supposed to shed blood in the Ganda tradition.
- The Muslims overthrew Kiwewa after a few months for refusing to convert to Islam.

- His younger brother Kalema was then handed the power and he embraced Islam and was given the name Rashid.
- Christians were not pleased with this development and they were forced to ally with the deposed Mwanga.
- In October 1889, a combined force of Christians brought back Mwanga to power and Kalema and his Muslim supporters fled to Bunyoro.
- On 30th April 1890, Mwanga signed an agreement with Fredrick Jackson which placed Buganda under the protection of IBEACO.
- Mwanga embraced Christianity and was christened Daniel and even appointed Catholics in his government.
- These developments did not end his problems as conflicts and quarrels continued between the missionary groups leading to the famous W'ngereza – W'faransa wars.
- During the conflicts, Captain Fredrick Lugard of IBEACO armed the Protestants with 500 guns to fight the Catholics.
- The British accused the Catholics of supporting Mwanga against their rule.

- Mwanga was defeated with his Catholic allies and he took refuge in Buddu (Masaka).
- In 1893, he was recalled to sign a treaty with General Gerald Portal to end the mess in Buganda by equally dividing all posts among the Catholics and Protestants.
- In 1897, Mwanga got the support of disgruntled chiefs and he tried to resist the new British changes e.g. Kabaka's loss of power and stopping collection of tribute from Busoga.
- Unfortunately, the revolt was crushed and Mwanga fled to Tanganyika where he surrendered to the Germans.
- The British deposed Mwanga and proclaimed his one year old son – Daudi Chwa II as the Kabaka with three ministers as his regents.
- In 1898, Mwanga escaped from the Germans and he joined his ex-enemy Kabalega in Lango to continue with the resistance against the British.
- With the help of Semei Kakungulu, Mwanga and Kabalega were captured on 9th April 1899 at Kangai near Lake Kyoga.
- This completely marked the end of his rebellion against British rule.

- Mwanga and Kabalega were exiled to Seychelles Island on the Indian Ocean.
- Mwanga died in exile on 8th May 1903 and he is remembered for trying to safeguard Buganda's independence.

Omukama Kabalega

- He was born in 1850 to Omukama Kamurasi.
- He spent his early years in Bulega where his father had been exiled by a rebellion.
- From Bulega, he got the name Kabalega meaning 'someone from Bulega'.
- In 1869, he was involved in a power struggle with his brother Kabigumire over who should succeed their father.
- In 1870, he came to power after defeating his brother by using the support of commoners, Langi mercenaries and his father's bodyguards.
- His problems didn't end with the defeat of his brother and therefore his early years in power were full of trouble.

- These ranged from internal rivalry, Buganda's threats, increased European interests in Bunyoro and the need to revive Bunyoro's lost glory.
- He also built a strong army of the Abarusula with two regiments of 1800 men each and armed with guns got from coastal Arabs and Khartoumers.
- He expanded Bunyoro's boundaries to areas such as Toro, Acholi, Busoga, Buganda and Lango.
- Kabalega's imperialism soon landed him into clashes with the British who were also extending colonial rule in Uganda.
- In June 1872, he resisted British intrusion when he fought Sir Samuel Baker and his Egyptian allies at the battle of Isansa at the Masindi border.
- Sir Samuel Baker and his Egyptian allies were utterly defeated and this dismayed the British.
- Due to that success, Kabalega then attacked Buganda in the East which made him face Captain Fredrick Lugard and his Ganda allies.
- At this time, he realized that his wars against the British were bound to cause him more problems and so he opted for peace.

- He hoped that Sir Samuel Baker would give him military support against Buganda.
- Sir Samuel Baker told him that he would only offer his support if Kabalega accepted Egyptian protection which Kabalega refused.
- He even refused to sign the treaty of protection with Sir Samuel Baker.
- In 1893, he attacked Kasagama of Toro, drove him out of his capital and forced him to seek refuge in Buddu (Masaka).
- Kasagama met Lugard on his way who gave him support and he managed to defeat Kabalega's forces and Kasagama was restored back to power.
- A number of forts were built along the Toro – Bunyoro border to protect Kasagama against attacks from Kabalega.
- Later, Kabalega attacked these forts and deposed Kasagama again.
- In 1894, Lugard led a force of Europeans, Sudanese and Ganda mercenaries and they attacked and defeated Kabalega.
- Kabalega abandoned his capital at Mparo and retreated to Budongo forest.

- The British under Colonel Colville occupied Bunyoro and installed his son-Kitahimbwa as the new Omukama.
- In Budongo forest, Kabalega continued with his resistance using the guerilla tactics of hit and run.
- In 1895, he successfully defeated the British and Ganda forces in Masindi.
- It was Semei Kakungulu who defeated him in Budongo forest and he fled to Lango in northern Uganda.
- In Lango, he was joined by Mwanga who was also running away from British imperialism in Buganda.
- The two continued with their resistance by using the guerilla war tactic against British rule.
- However, in Lango, the two were betrayed by local chiefs who reported them to Semei Kakungulu.
- They were captured on 9th April 1899 at Kangai in a swamp near Lake Kyoga.
- Kakungulu brought them to Kampala and handed them officially to the British who deported them to Seychelles Island in the Indian Ocean.
- Even in exile, the Banyoro continued looking at Kabalega as their hero and pressed for his return.

- While in exile, he converted to Christianity and was baptized Yohana.
- Later on, he was allowed to return as a commoner but he didn't reach Bunyoro.
- He died at Mpumudde near Jinja on 7th April 1923 at the age of 75.
- He was buried at Mparo in present day Hoima district and he was remembered as an African hero who staged a serious resistance to the British occupation of his area.

Chief Awich of Payera

- Awich was a Rwoth (chief) of Payera in Acholi district.
- He came to power in the 1880's after the death of his father, Rwoth Camo.
- By the time he came to power, the British were busy extending their rule in Northern Uganda.
- He constantly attacked and raided his neighbours e.g. the Paibona.
- These acts greatly annoyed the Major Radcliffe Delme who was the British Commissioner at Nimule.

- The commissioner pleaded to Awich to stop his activities but he refused and even escaped arrest from the British.
- Awich even refused to sign a treaty with Colonel Mac-Donald as other Acholi chiefs had done in 1892.
- British hatred for him increased when he gave asylum to Kabalega and his fugitives who were terrorizing the colony from Lango.
- He defied British pleas for him to chase away Kabalega and his fugitive soldiers.
- In 1898, a British force under Major Herman set out to capture chief Awich and in 1901, he was captured and taken to Nimule.
- He was imprisoned and while in prison, his people continued to revolt and demanded for his return.
- In March 1902, the British reinstated him as the ruler in Payera after failing to establish administration in his absence.
- In 1903, Colonel Mac-Donald tried to persuade him to accept British rule but he refused.
- Awich was then involved in inter-clan wars on the side of the Joka clan of Purnanga against the Langi and Ogoora clan.

- In January 1912, he was accused of amassing guns from the Arabs and the British began to register them.
- Awich organized the Acholi to resist the policy of arms registration and this resulted into the Lamogi rebellion.
- He was thus arrested and taken to court at Nimule to face charges.
- During the court session, he lost his temper and boxed a British prosecutor called Sullivan who was cross examining him.
- He was fined two cows, a goat and ivory and he was imprisoned at Kololo in Kampala for contempt of court.
- As he served his prison sentence, his chiefdom was divided into two.
- By the time he returned in 1919 from prison, he was no longer a ruler and his chiefdom was no more.
- He however invited Christian missionaries to his area to teach his people Christianity and book learning.
- He died in the 1920's having done a lot to protect his area against British rule.

THE ABUSHIRI UPRISING (1888 – 1890)

- This was the earliest resistance against German rule in Tanganyika.
- It took place on the Tanzania coast between 1888 – 1890.
- It was basically a revolt of the coastal slave traders and it included some Africans and Swahili traders.
- The Abushiri uprisings were divided into two.
- The one in the northern coastal area around Pangani was led by Abushiri.
- The one in the south near Dar-es-salaam and Kilwa was led by Bwana Heri.

CAUSES OF THE ABUSHIRI UPRISING

- The rebellion was intended to keep the coast independent and free from German domination.
- The coastal traders and Swahili were protecting their economic power i.e. the German East Africa Company had abolished slave trade which was the major trade item of the Arabs.
- The coastal people were also angered by the Germans who had taken over the collecting of mainland import duties or taxes.

- The coastal people were also protesting against the loss of their property e.g. GEACO had started confiscating Arab houses to be used as bases for German administration.
- The GEACO had started issuing economic restrictions on ownership of land and property which the Arab traders challenged.
- The Germans did not respect the cultures and traditions of the coastal people mainly because the Germans were Christians and Arabs were Moslems.
- The Coastal people were also angered by German attempts to alienate their land. E.g. in 1888 they came up with a new land regulation which required people to have proof of land ownership.
- The Germans demanded heavy taxes from the traders and local people e.g. poll tax, hut tax and inheritance tax on top of brutally collecting the taxes.
- The Germans had recruited the Akidas and Jumbes in their administration who were mistreating the Arab traders yet they were related to the coastal Arabs.
- Presence of able leadership by Abushiri in Pangani, Bwana Heri in Uzigua and Matoro in Lindi also led to the outbreak of the revolts.

- The local rulers were being humiliated and harassed by the Germans who flogged them in public and embarrassed them before their subjects.
- The Germans forced the Africans to grow cash crops under severe conditions which angered the coastal people.
- The rise of nationalistic feelings also led to the outbreak of revolts. There was a desire to regain their independence that had been eroded.
- The Arabs had participated in the Indian Ocean trade for so long and had gathered weapons e.g. guns which forced them to engage the Germans in war.
- The Germans disrespected the coastal Arabs e.g. they drank and slept with peoples' wives and even entered Mosques with their dogs which annoyed the Moslems.

COURSE OF ABUSHIRI REBELLION

- It started on 18th August 1888 in Pangani where GEACO had established an administrative post.
- It was led by Abushiri Ibn Salim al Harthi, a prominent Arab trader and sugar cane planter in Pangani.

- It started when Abushiri refused to raise / hoist the German flag and even refused to listen to the German instructions and his people started rioting against the Germans.
- The rebellion abruptly and spontaneously spread to other areas e.g. Tanga, Kilwa, Mikindini and Kilwa.
- Some Bantu communities' e.g. the Bonda and Zinguwa also joined the rebellion.
- Bwana Heri, a Swahili chief in Uzigua and other coastal Arabs joined the revolt.
- The Germans were caught unaware and suffered heavy losses.
- GEACO officials were beaten and driven out of all coastal towns except Dar-es-Salaam.
- The Abushiri rebels surrounded them and captured them.
- The Germans called for assistance from home and by May **1889,** reinforcement had arrived under Major Von Wissman.
- He commanded a large army of **600** Nubian, Sudanese, **50** Somalis, **350** Zulus and **20** Turkish troops.

- Within **2** months, Wissman had captured Pangani and Dar-es-Salaam.
- Many Arabs who had supported Abushiri opted to make peace with the Germans.
- Smelling defeat, Abushiri retreated into the interior and hired **500** Maviti fighters (Ngoni warriors).
- They used the Ngoni tactics of warfare but did not save the situation because they were only interested in looting.
- He later adopted the guerilla war tactic of hit and run.
- By 15th Dec 1889 most of his followers had deserted him.
- He was later betrayed by a Jumbe called Magaya of Usagara.
- He was captured and killed at Bagamoyo.
- By 1890, Von Wissman had moved to the south and captured all coastal towns e.g. Kilwa, and Lindi.
- In April 1890, Bwana Heri also submitted to the Germans and this marked the end of the rebellion.

PROBLEMS FACED BY ABUSHIRI DURING THE RESISTANCE AGAINST THE GERMANS.

- He had never been a military man and so were many of his followers who lacked military training.
- It was poorly organized since the fighters lacked serious military strategies and thorough preparation.
- Abushiri's weapons were inferior e.g. old fashioned guns, bows, arrows and short stabbing spears which couldn't match the guns of the Germans.
- The Germans had recruited a large force reinforced by Nubians, Sudanese, Somalis and Zulu and Turkish troops.
- The 500 Maviti mercenaries recruited by Abushiri lacked interest in war and instead of fighting they were just looting from the Germans.
- Some coastal tribes easily gave in to the Germans e.g. Magaya of Usagara even gave the Germans information about Abushiri.
- The rebellion wasn't well coordinated and lacked a united command e.g. Abushiri led forces in Pangani, Bwana Heri in Uzigua and Matoro in Kilwa.
- The revolt lacked a national outlook i.e. the indigenous people (blacks) did not join the revolt because it was entirely an Arab revolt.

- ❖ Abushiri employed poor methods of fighting e.g. they used open warfare which put him and his troops at a disadvantage.
- ❖ The Germans also used cruel methods to suppress the rebellion e.g. the scorched earth policy, hanging the captured rioters and shooting at first sight which greatly scared the rebels.
- ❖ Abushiri was forced into the interior where he lacked an Arab following. E.g. he was cut off from the supply of guns and ammunition while in the interior
- ❖ The Germans were determined to crush the rebellion because they wanted to colonize Tanganyika.
- ❖ The landscape of the coast lacked defensive barriers so the Abushiri rebels could be spotted from far.
- ❖ Famine also weakened the Abushiri rebels e.g. many of the Bwana Heri fighters surrendered due to starvation.

EFFECTS OF THE REBELLION

- There was heavy loss of lives like Abushiri was killed during the rebellion.
- There was heavy destruction of property e.g. buildings were demolished.

- Abushiri was defeated which marked the end of his independence and that of the coastal Arabs.
- There was deliberate spread of cattle diseases like rinder pest, by the Germans.
- The Germans used the scorched earth policy which led to outbreak of famine.
- The Germans were forced to change their government e.g. they brought in traditional rulers to replace the Akidas and Jumbes at the coast.
- The Germans also realized the weaknesses of GEACO hence the colonial government took over immediately.
- Abushiri's defeat opened up East Africa for colonization e.g. many European settlers started coming to Tanganyika.
- After the defeat of Abushiri, peace returned to the coastal towns after a long time of political turmoil (upheaval / chaos)
- The rebellion taught the people of northern Tanganyika not to bother resisting the Germans again.
- The Germans were forced to work with the Arabs and Africans at the coast e.g. they trained a lot of personnel to help in the administration of the area.

- Coastal towns like Kilwa, Malindi, Zanzibar and interior tribes of Tanganyika were forced to recognize German ownership over Tanganyika.
- The rebellion also spread waves of nationalism with in Tanganyika e.g. Maji Maji revolt and Hehe revolts in Southern Tanganyika were as a result of Abushiri's fight against the Germans.

THE HEHE REBELLION/CHIEF MKWAWA'S RESISTANCE (1890 - 1898)

- The Hehe rebellion was the first major uprising that took place on mainland Tanganyika against German rule.
- The rebellion took place in southern Tanganyika.
- It was spearheaded by ***chief Mkwawa*** who had come to power in 1878.
- The major cause of the war was chief Mkwawa's refusal to give up on trading activities as he had been instructed by the German colonialists.

CAUSES OF THE REBELLION

- Chief Mkwawa wanted to maintain the independence of his people which the Germans had eroded i.e. he didn't want his people to be under foreign rule.
- The Hehe under Mkwawa had built a strong army due to their participation in trade with the Arabs through which they got guns and they thought that they could humiliate the German forces.
- Mkwawa levied a heavy ***Hongo*** tax on the caravans that passed through his area and when the Germans requested him to stop the tax, he refused and this led to war with the Germans.
- When German traders refused to pay tax to Mkwawa, he angrily reacted by closing the trade routes and imprisoning many traders at Usagara which annoyed the Germans.
- The Hehe also resisted because the Germans had grabbed a lot of Hehe lands to introduce plantation farming.
- The Germans were always interrupting Mkwawa's aggressive expansionist raids against his neighbours and this brought him to clashes with the Germans who were also spreading their rule.

- Mkwawa was also annoyed with German disrespect for him e.g. they called him backward and uncivilized yet he was a sovereign ruler of the Hehe.
- Mkwawa also claimed to be the sole controller of the central long distance trade route (Tabora - Bagamoyo) which the Germans were also claiming and this resulted into war.
- Forced labour on European farms, public works like roads also forced Mkwawa to mobilize his people to rebel against German rule.
- Mkwawa's diplomatic envoys (messengers) were on several occasions gunned down by the Germans forcing him to angrily retaliate by engaging them in warfare.
- Mkwawa also expelled the German mercenaries (Akidas and Jumbes) that had been brought in to assist the Germans in administration. This annoyed the Germans who resorted to war.
- The Hehe were also resisting cultural imperialism of the Germans who were encouraging Christianity, and western education and were condemning African cultures.

- The Hehe were also known to be war mongers and they took a lot of pride in fighting and that is why they revolted against the Germans.
- Mkwawa's character also led to the outbreak of the revolt i.e. he was big headed and unpredictable. E.g. when he imprisoned the German traders for not paying tax, the Germans requested him to release them but he refused and this annoyed the Germans.
- The Hehe also expected support from chief Chabruma of the Ngoni and chief Siki of Tabora and this gave them courage to fight against the Germans.

Course of the Hehe rebellion

- Chief Mkwawa came to power in 1878 after succeeding his father **Munyigumba.**
- He built a strong army which he used to stage a prolonged resistance against the Germans in southern Tanganyika.
- From 1880, Mkwawa was busy expanding his borders of his empire.
- It landed him into trouble with the Germans who were busy expanding their rule in Tanganyika.

- In his bid to control the trade, Mkwawa closed the Tabora – Bagamoyo trade route.
- He also imprisoned German and Swahili traders for refusing to pay **Hongo tax/tribute**.
- Mkwawa was on several occasions requested by the Germans to release the traders he had imprisoned but he refused and this arrogance annoyed the Germans who reacted with force.
- Mkwawa's behavior was also based on the assumption that he was to get support from Chief Chabruma of the Ngoni and chief Siki of Tabora.
- In 1891, a German force under Zewlekis confronted Mkwawa for the first time.
- However he learnt of this plot and he ambushed and humiliated the German force at Lungala.
- He killed many Germans and their commander, Zewlekis.
- The Germans temporarily accepted defeat and they turned their attention to chief Isike of the Nyamwezi, who was willing to collaborate and work with them.
- Mkwawa later realized the need for a peaceful end to the conflict.

- He sent messengers with gifts to the Germans and they responded by gunning down Mkwawa's messengers.
- Mkwawa was greatly annoyed by this act and he responded by closing the caravan trade route from Bagamoyo to Tabora to all traders.
- This forced the Germans to organize more attacks against him.
- But Mkwawa was not to give up on his peaceful plans to end the conflicts.
- He therefore sent another messenger to the Germans with gifts but he was also killed.
- This greatly demoralized Mkwawa who engaged the Germans in full scale war at Kilosa.
- He managed to kill 290 Germans and their allies.
- In October 1892, he destroyed a long distance caravan at Kondowa which increased his influence in the region.
- Mkwawa was also able to complete the construction of his Fort at Kalenga.
- In 1894, the Germans decided to deal decisively with Mkwawa and they stormed and destroyed his capital at Kalenga killing many of his soldiers.

- With a handful of his men, Mkwawa escaped to Ingonge where he unsuccessfully attempted to ambush the Germans on their way back to the coast.
- After this, the Germans relaxed their machinery against Mkwawa thinking that this had completely weakened him, but they were mistaken.
- Mkwawa started using a guerilla war tactic (hit and run) to launch attacks on German controlled areas.
- This also forced the Germans to adopt the scorched earth policy.
- The Germans destroyed water and food reservoirs, which caused wide spread hunger and starvation.
- Between 1895 – 1898, Mkwawa suffered heavy losses as his warriors were killed.
- After sensing defeat, Mkwawa refused to be captured alive and instead shot himself in 1898.
- A few of his trusted soldiers also surrendered to the Germans.
- When the Germans found his body, they cut off his head and sent it to a museum in Berlin (Germany) and this marked the end of the Hehe resistance against the Germans.

REASONS FOR MKWAWA'S DEFEAT

- Military superiority of the Germans compared to Mkwawa's outdated guns.
- Lack of support from neighbouring societies e.g. the Sangu chief always spied on chief Mkwawa.
- The Germans always received massive support from their home gov't e.g. weapons, medicine.
- The Hehe had a poor economy that could not sustain the prolonged resistance.
- Lack of proper planning e.g. no battle plans were made.
- The scorched earth policy used by the Germans caused a lot of famine which weakened the Hehe.
- Mkwawa lacked advisers e.g. he should have released the German traders who had not paid Hongo tax.
- German brutality also scared some of Mkwawa's forces and they surrendered.
- The long periods of drought and diseases also weakened the Hehe.
- By the time of his death, Mkwawa was sickly and this also led to the defeat against the Germans.

- The Germans' determination to completely discipline Mkwawa led to his defeat.
- Mkwawa made a mistake of constructing a fort at Kalenga and this made it easy for the Germans to ambush his strongest point of defense.
- Mkwawa had also neglected other areas in the Hehe region and was only concentrating on his capital at Kalenga and this made it easy for the Germans to defeat areas beyond the capital.
- Mkwawa had been cut off from the Arab supply of arms which also weakened his army.
- Finally, the death of Mkwawa left his forces with low morale for fighting, and many surrendered to the Germans afterwards.

EFFECTS OF THE HEHE REBELLION

✓ The Hehe were defeated by the Germans and they lost their independence.

✓ Many people were killed e.g. at Kilosa, Mkwawa killed 290 Germans and their allies.

- ✓ The death of people resulted into massive depopulation in southern Tanganyika.
- ✓ The rebellion caused a lot of misery, suffering which forced some people to migrate to safer areas.
- ✓ There was destruction of property e.g. villages, food stores especially when the Germans used the scorched earth policy.
- ✓ Famine set in because people had neglected agriculture to fight the Germans.
- ✓ After the war, the Germans became more cruel and brutal to Africans which increased suffering.
- ✓ Trade was disrupted especially along the central trade route in Nyamwezi land and Hehe land due to Mkwawa's anti-German campaigns.
- ✓ The Hehe learnt a lesson, that in future they should not bother resisting the Germans because they were superior e.g. during Maji-Maji rebellion (1905-1907), the Hehe didn't participate.
- ✓ The Germans also learnt a lesson that African resistances shouldn't be taken for granted because the Hehe rebellion proved to the Germans that Africans could organize a war.

- ✓ The rebellion spread waves of nationalism in Southern Tanganyika and this led to other revolts in future e.g. Maji-Maji revolt (1905-1907)
- ✓ Africans who assisted the Germans during the war were rewarded by the Germans after the war e.g. the Sangu chief was promoted to the position of an Akida.
- ✓ Diseases like dysentery and sleeping sickness were also spread.
- ✓ The rebellion greatly affected the economic development of southern Tanganyika because many activities came to a standstill.
- ✓ The Germans introduced new advisers and disbanded Mkwawa council of advisers which led to the introduction of Akidas and Jumbes in the area.

MAJI -MAJI REBELLION (1905 – 1907)

- The Maji-Maji rebellion took place in southern Tanganyika and was against the German rule.
- The rebellion included a large section of tribes in southern Tanganyika e.g. Zaramo, Wangindo, Bena, Pogoro, Matumbi e.t.c.
- The rebellion got its name from a Swahili phrase “maji-maji” which means magic water.

- This magic water was got from River Rufiji by a medicine man called Bakero Kinjikitile Ngwale.
- The rebellion stated in July 1905 and ended in 1907.

Causes of Maji Maji rebellion

- The unsuccessful cotton scheme: The people of southern Tanganyika were forced to grow cotton by the Germans in 1902 but the soils were poor and the yields were also poor.
- Africans also received very little pay for the cotton and this is what sparked off the rebellion.
- Forced labor on government farms and public works like roads also forced Africans to rebel e.g. Africans worked for long hours and received little or no pay at all.
- Heavy taxes. The Germans imposed taxes on Africans e.g. three rupees per cotton plot yet the taxes were accompanied with cruel methods of collection e.g. failure to pay meant torture, flogging and imprisonment.
- Loss of land/land alienation: Africans in Southern Tanganyika had lost a lot of their lands to the German

settlers forcing them to move to remote and unfavorable land.

- The desire to regain independence that had been eroded by the Germans also led to the Maji – Maji rebellion in 1905.
- The Africans were also resisting the cultural imperialism of the Germans who were encouraging Christianity and western education in favor of African cultures.
- The Wangindo blamed the German mercenaries i.e. Akidas and Jumbes for raping and eloping with their wives and daughters as they were working on the cotton farms. .Akidas and Jumbes also allowed their dogs to enter Mosques and this greatly annoyed the Muslims.
- The rebellion was also caused by the struggle to control the trade between the coast and the interior i.e. both Germans and Africans all claimed to control the trade.
- Kinjikitile's religious Propaganda that the magic water would give the fighters protection against German bullets inspired the Africans to fight and Kinjikitile provided the long awaited leadership for the revolt.

- The replacement of African traditional rulers with the Akidas and Jumbes, who were very harsh, brutal and corrupt also led to the rebellion.
- Effects of earlier rebellions for example the Hehe rebellion of 1890 in Tanganyika also inspired the Africans in Southern Tanganyika to rebel.
- The Ngoni had a personal grievance against the Germans because they wanted to revenge on the Germans for murdering their tribe mates during the Boma massacres in 1897.

Course of the rebellion

- In 1904, a traditional priest called Bakero Kinjikitile Ngwale emerged from the Ngarambe hills near River Rufigi.
- He was possessed by a spirit called Hongo which stayed in a pond near River Rufigi.
- It was from River Rufigi that the Magic water was got and mixed with millet, sorghum and local herbs to give immunity to the German bullets.
- By January 1905, a secret movement called Jujila or Nywiwila had been formed among the Wangindo and Matumbi.

- ❖ This movement worked by secretly communicating from one person to another, encouraging people to go for Kinjikitile's Magic water.
- ❖ However Kinjikitile did not instruct people to go and start fighting and when the Germans heard about the medicine man from Ngarambe hills, they did not take him serious.
- ❖ By 1905, people grew impatient and decided to provoke the Germans into war by uprooting cotton farms and this was enough to engage the Germans into war against the Africans.
- ❖ From Rufiji area, within a few weeks the rebellion had quickly spread to other cotton producing areas like Uluguru, Mahenge and Kilombero valleys.
- ❖ On 2nd August 1905, the Africans attacked the coastal town of Samanga near Kilwa where many traders and government officials were murdered.
- ❖ The whole town was burnt down and German missionaries were murdered.
- ❖ From this time, the rebellion spread to all areas through night messengers and several societies e.g. the Mbuga, Bena, Pogoro, Zaramo later joined the rebellion.

- ❖ On the 30th August 1905, Maji – Maji fighters attacked Lukuledi and Mahinge Valleys where the Germans were caught unprepared and it was a success for the Africans.
- ❖ This forced the Germans to take the rebellion seriously and they adopted the scorched earth policy while the Africans resorted to Guerilla warfare.
- ❖ The Germans ordered for reinforcements and by November 1905, it had arrived under Von Wissman and the Germans started suppressing the rebellion systematically.
- ❖ From 1906, the Germans rounded up whoever was opposed to their rule especially the ring leaders.
- ❖ Leaders were killed, captured while others surrendered and Kinjikitile didn't survive these killings.
- ❖ Others decided to go into exile in Mozambique and when Kinjikitile was killed the rebellion came to an end in 1907 with the Germans emerging victorious.

Why Africans lost the war

- ✓ Kinjikitile false Propaganda i.e. the magic water didn't provide immunity against German bullets as he had claimed.

- ✓ There was no military training carried out to prepare the fighters for war.
- ✓ Africans had poor organization i.e. people just joined the rebellion basing on Kinjikitile's Propaganda.
- ✓ Africans lacked unity among the various tribes i.e. some were even fighting amongst themselves.
- ✓ Africans lacked a unified command i.e. they had more than one leader and they always fought together as a whole community and not in troops or battalions.
- ✓ The Germans also used the scorched earth policy which left many African homes, food stores and gardens destroyed.
- ✓ The Hehe, Chagga and Nyamwezi did not join the rebellion which reduced the power of the Africans fighting against the Germans.
- ✓ Superiority of the German forces i.e. the Germans had guns while Africans had traditional and crude weapons e.g. Spears, bows, and arrows, stones e.t.c.
- ✓ The Maji Maji fighters lacked persistence i.e. some tribes pulled out leaving fellow fighters to suffer.
- ✓ The Germans received help from Germany in form of arms and troops.

- ✓ Slave trade had also taken away the energetic men and left the weak ones .who could not do much in the rebellion.
- ✓ Africans had poor economies that could not sustain a prolonged war against a rich and powerful country like Germany.
- ✓ The death of African leaders also made the rebellion lose continuity and strength e.g. Kinjikitile Ngwale.
- ✓ The Germans were also determined to take over Tanganyika whether by hook or crook.

Effects of the rebellion

- The Maji Maji fighters were defeated and this completely led to the loss of African independence.
- Many people lost their lives i.e. over 75,000 people were killed during the suppression of the rebellion.
- As a result of the killings, there was heavy depopulation particularly in southern Tanganyika.
- There was massive destruction of property i.e. settlements. Villages and cotton farms were burnt to the ground.

- There was wide spread misery and suffering caused by the ruthless Germans.
- A period of famine (Fuga Fuga) set in because people had neglected farming and the Germans had also used the scorched earth policy to destroy farms.
- Africans lost confidence and trust in religion and traditional leaders and medicine men and started joining foreign religions like Christianity.
- Many people were crippled in the war campaigns and others forced into exile especially to Mozambique.
- The rebellion was a source of inspiration for future nationalists like Oscar Kambona and Julius. K. Nyerere who led the fight for independence.
- Africans who collaborated with the Germans were rewarded with posts in the colonial government land.
- The Germans also learnt from the rebellion and made changes in their administration e.g. the harsh Akidas and Jumbes were sacked / fired.
- The colonial government made economic reforms e.g. taxes were relaxed and mistreatment of Africans was made punishable.

- Africans were encouraged to grow cash crops on their own individual plots rather than on a communal basis.
- In education, Africans were encouraged to go to School and scholarships were given to promising Students in order to fight ignorance.
- Economic activities like trade came to a standstill in Tanganyika and that is why the area lagged behind for a long time in terms of economic development.

NANDI RESISTANCE (1895-1906)

- The Nandi put up a strong and prolonged battle against the British in 1895.
- The rebellion took place in western Kenya particularly in the Uasin-Gishu plateau.

CAUSES OF THE NANDI RESISTANCE

- The Nandi fought the British in order to defend their independence i.e. they didn't want British interference in their society affairs.
- The Nandi did not want to see any stranger crossing their land and in 1895, they killed a British trader Peter West and this sparked off the war.

- ❖ The religious prophecy of Orkoiyot Kimnyole also inspired the Nandi to fight the British e.g. He warned that the Nandi land would at one time be ruled by foreigners.
- ❖ The construction of the Uganda railway also provided the Nandi with an excuse to fight the British i.e. Prophet Orkoiyot had warned them of the "Big iron snake" belching smoke that came from the East to quench its thirst in the west. (Lake Victoria)
- ❖ They believed that they were militarily superior because they had successfully defeated and raided all their neighbours e.g. the Maasai.
- ❖ The Nandi also resisted because they believed in their cultural superiority and didn't want the British to pollute their culture e.g. they resented the British dressing code and looked at it as the Nandi female devils.
- ❖ The Nandi also had a belief that their land was the most fertile land in the whole world and therefore didn't want to lose it to the British colonialists.
- ❖ The Nandi also resisted because their traditional enemies and neighbours the Maasai and Luyia had collaborated with the British.

- The Nandi were a Warrior society that took pride in fighting and raiding and therefore when the British came, they took it as a chance to show their military might.
- The Nandi resistance was also inspired by other rebellions like the Hehe and Abushiri revolts in Tanganyika.
- The Nandi also had an environment advantage i.e. the Nandi hills were suitable for war with little space for open warfare.
- The rise of Nandi nationalism towards the end of the 19th century also inspired the Nandi to challenge the British.
- The killing of the Nandi leader Orkoiyot Koitale Arap Samoei in a shameful incident also forced the Nandi to pick up arms to fight the British.
- The British were also interfering in Ivory and slave trade which were the main source of livelihood for most of the Nandi.

COURSE OF THE NANDI RESISTANCE

- Clashes between the British and the Nandi begun in 1895 when a British trader Peter West was killed by the Nandi for attempting to cross their land.
- The British responded immediately by sending a force under General Cunningham comprised of six British and several Sudanese and Swahili mercenaries.
- This force was defeated with 30 of their men killed.
- In 1897, the Nandi successfully attacked the British and destroyed their mail system.
- The British organized another force under the command of Truman and even recruited Maasai mercenaries but still they were crushed.
- In 1900, when the Uganda railway reached their area, the Nandi often killed the Indian railway workers before disappearing into the hills.
- At the same time, the Nandi attacked the Luo and Luyia tribes that were under the British and raided traders passing through that area.
- The British mobilized a stronger force comprising of Ganda, Maasai and Sudanese mercenaries but still they were crushed.

- This greatly worried the British who resorted to burning Villages and confiscating Nandi cows but the Nandi didn't give up.
- After suffering several losses, the British decided to change tactics and adopted peaceful negotiations to end the war because they wanted the railway construction to go on.
- The Nandi were also tired of the war, negotiations begun and an agreement was reached.
- The Nandi allowed the British to build centres in Kipture, Kiptume and Kapkolei.
- The peace was short lived and the Nandi resumed their attacks on the railway builders and looting telegram wires.
- In 1902, the British organized an expedition which registered minimum success and this time the British decided to use force and diplomacy.
- In the same year, the British built a strong force of about 1500 soldiers but its diplomacy which ended the Nandi wars.
- In 1905, a British commander Colonel Meinertzhagen visited the Nandi leader Orkoiyot Koitale Samoei Arap

Kimnyole and as he came out to greet his visitors, he was shot dead with some of his men.

- To the Nandi, this was cold blooded murder of their leader and between October and November 1905, they tried to stage Guerilla wars but they were defeated with heavy losses.
- By December 1905, the Nandi had lost the morale and spirit of fighting and this marked the end of their resistance against the British.
- The Nandi were forced into reserves in the north far away from the railway line so that construction work would go on and their fertile lands were given to European settlers.

WHY THE NANDI RESISTED THE BRITISH FOR SO LONG

Unlike other rebellions, the Nandi put up a prolonged resistance against the British for over 11years.

- The Nandi were involved in the L.D.T through which they were able to acquire guns from their neighbours the Akamba.

- The Nandi pride i.e. they were a superior race militarily and culturally which gave them determination to fight the British for so long.
- The emergence of Orkoiyot Koitale provided the necessary leadership for the wars because this united the Nandi and gave them morale.
- The Nandi never suffered from famine because their land was fertile and could therefore support agriculture which provided enough food for their troops.
- Being a warrior society, the Nandi had a lot of experience in fighting e.g. they had a long of history of successfully defeating their neighbours like Maasai, Luyia and Luo.
- The Nandi area had an environment advantage because it was hilly with little space for open warfare and the British could not use their maxim gun effectively.
- The Nandi had a strong, organized and highly disciplined army which was divided into units and companies based on clans and place of residence.
- The Nandi employed the Guerilla tactic which involved ambushes (hit and run) especially at night and

this always surprised the British who were unprepared for these fights.

- The cutting of telecommunication lines by the Nandi hindered the transportation of British troops and reinforcements.
- The Nandi lacked defensive units e.g. forts and barracks which could have been possible targets for the British forces.
- The presence of black smiths among the Nandi who constantly made iron weapons like spears, arrows and these were used to strengthen the Nandi army.

WHY THE NANDI FINALLY LOST THE WAR

- The British had a lot of determination because this was delaying colonialism and they wanted to construct the Uganda railway.
- The death of Orkoiyot Koitale also led to the final defeat of the Nandi i.e. he died in a shameful manner hence causing them to lose the morale of fighting.
- The Nandi had inferior weapons which could not compete effectively with the superior weapons of the British who had the maxim guns.

- The British always got support from neighbouring countries e.g. Uganda, Sudan and Egypt in form of troops and ammunitions (weapons)
- The British always recruited mercenaries into their army e.g. Maasai and Sudanese mercenaries who made their army grow stronger.
- The Nandi lacked support from their immediate neighbours like the Maasai which greatly led to their defeat.
- The recruited mercenaries knew about the Nandi military tactics which information was used by the British to defeat the Nandi.
- The scorched earth policy employed by the British greatly weakened the Nandi because several farms and houses were destroyed and this left the Nandi suffering.
- Many of the Nandi troops and people were always killed by the tropical diseases and famine which reduced on their military might.
- The Nandi neighbours who were hired as mercenaries also had the determination to support the British and defeat the Nandi who had terrorized them for so long.

- The British tricked the Nandi into negotiations and agreements into accepting to work with the British, also weakened the Nandi military might.
- British missionaries used the tactic of spreading Christianity which brought about disunity amongst the Nandi.

Effects of the Nandi resistance

- ✓ There was heavy loss of lives especially the Africans which led to depopulation in the area.
- ✓ There was massive destruction of property. E.g. Villages and food stores were all set on fire and this led to famine.
- ✓ The Nandi lost their land to the white settlers and the Uganda railway line and were pushed to infertile lands in the north.
- ✓ There was wide spread poverty and misery in the Nandi area due to the serious economic destruction.
- ✓ The Nandi were over powered and therefore defeated which completely marked the end of their independence.
- ✓ Some of the Nandi who lost their land to the Europeans were forced to migrate to towns and urban centres to make ends meet.

- ✓ The British were able to construct the railway line through the Nandi area with minimum difficulty and it was extended to Kisumu and Uganda.
- ✓ The defeat of the Nandi taught their neighbours a lesson that the British were militarily superior and many decided to collaborate e.g. Maasai. Luo and Luyia.
- ✓ The Nandi superiority and arrogance in the region was crushed mainly because they had terrorized and bullied most of their neighbours.
- ✓ Many people were converted to Christianity because the teachings of Prophet Orkoiyot Koitale had failed to guide them into defeating the British.
- ✓ Forts and European stations were built throughout the area e.g. in Kiptume and Kapkolei after the defeat of the Nandi.
- ✓ With the defeat of the Nandi, more Europeans poured into Kenya and took over the Kenyan highlands.
- ✓ The Nandi resistance taught the British a lesson that the Africans could also put up an organized resistance.
- ✓ The rebellion spread waves of nationalism throughout Kenya and this led to future revolts e.g. Mau-Mau rebellion in 1952.

MAU- MAU REBELLION (1952 - 1956)

- This was a clandestine (secret) nationalistic movement in Kenya.
- It was formed by extremist ex-soldiers of World War II in 1946 to fight the colonial government.
- The phrase Mau-Mau is an abbreviation of a Swahili slogan “mzungu ayende ulaya Mwafirika Apate Uhuru” loosely translated as the ‘white man should return to Europe and the African gets independence’.
- The rebellion effectively begun in 1952 and ended in 1960.

Causes of the rebellion

❖ Loss of land to the white settlers angered the Africans especially the Kikuyu and that’s why they joined the movement in large numbers.

❖ Africans were pushed into reserve camps where conditions were unfavorable for instance they were overcrowded and lacked schools and medical centers.

❖ Mau-Mau fighters were struggling for the independence of Kenya i.e. most of the ex-soldiers had a negative view about colonialism.

- ❖ Poor labour conditions also forced Africans to join the Mau Mau movement i.e. Africans were denied employment as better jobs were given only to the whites.
- ❖ Restrictions imposed on the growing of cash crops also angered the Africans i.e. it were only the whites that were allowed to grow cash crops.
- ❖ The return of the World War II ex-soldiers led to the formation of the movement. When they compared the situation in Europe with that of Kenya, it was still backward.
- ❖ Africans were also against the introduction of the Kipande (Identity cards) because it denied Africans freedom of movement.
- ❖ The Mau Mau resistance was also as a result of unfair taxation i.e. the British introduced poll tax which was too high for the Africans.
- ❖ Africans were denied a chance of trading with their neighbours, Asians and the coastal people because the trade was dominated by Indians or Asians.
- ❖ Mau -Mau fighters also hated the European attitude towards African traditional beliefs and cultures e.g. missionaries attacked the Kikuyu female circumcision.

- ❖ Africans were denied a chance of attaining western education and this was a deliberate move to keep them backward.
- ❖ Africans also hated racial segregation in education Institutions, residential areas, and medical centres and in government offices hence caused rebellions.
- ❖ The emergence of able leaders also led to the formation of the movement i.e. leadership was provided by Elites such as Jomo Kenyatta, Harry Thuku, Bildad Kaggia, Dedan Kimathi, General China (Waruhiu Itote).
- ❖ Africans were also tired of the settlers influence on Government decisions and policies i.e. the settlers wanted to turn Kenya into a settler colony like Rhodesia and South Africa.
- ❖ The Mau Mau fighters were not pleased by the revelations of the British government to affect constitutional changes in Kenya i.e. they wanted greater African representation on the legislative council.

Course of the rebellion

- Mau -Mau started in 1946 as an underground movement in Kenya to fight the colonial government and bring independence as soon as possible.
- It was formed by the Kenya African Union extremists (KAU) including the ex-soldiers of World War II.
- The movement was basically a tribal rebellion of the Kikuyu and when fighting intensified, the rebellion spread to other communities such as Kamba, Meru, and Embu e.t.c.
- Mau -Mau guerillas and their supporters took oaths that bound them to obedience, secrecy and support of the movement.
- The supporters of the movement sang hymns in which the name of Jomo was substituted for Jesus Christ.
- By 1950, the Mau Mau fighters started to act violently and the British government declared the militant group illegal and unlawful.
- After being declared illegal, the guerillas retreated to Aberdare Ranges and slopes of Mt. Kenya where they launched attacks on the colonial government and white settler farms.

- They formed gangs which could steal arms, destroy plantations and committed arson (burning property that belonged to the settlers) e.g. plantations, homes e.t.c.
- Many chiefs who opposed the movement were hacked to death e.g. in October 1952 chief Waruhiu Kiambu was murdered for being loyal to the government.
- On 20th of October 1952, the British governor Sir Evelyn Baring declared a state of emergency.
- Sir Evelyn Barring called in the King's African Rifles (KAR) to suppress the movement and by the end of the year, more soldiers had been flown in from Britain.
- In April 1953, Jomo Kenyatta and other leaders of the movement especially the Kikuyu were tried and sentenced to 7yrs in jail.
- In 1954, several Kikuyu were arrested for not giving a convincing reason for being in Nairobi at such a time.
- In 1955, General China was arrested but Dedan Kimathi continued with the resistance up to October 1956 when he was also captured in the Aberdare forest.

- By 1956, the movement had been weakened seriously but the hunt for Mau -Mau fighters continued up to 1960.

Effects of the rebellion

- ✓ The rebellion was so costly to the British government i.e. The British spent over 50,000 pounds to suppress the movement.
- ✓ Many African leaders and activists were arrested for opposing colonialism e.g. Jomo Kenyatta, Dedan Kimathi, General China e.t.c.
- ✓ The rebellion taught the British that Kenyans seriously wanted independence and couldn't settle for anything less than that.
- ✓ There was massive destruction of property e.g. shops were looted and gardens belonging to the white settlers were destroyed.
- ✓ Many families and clans disintegrated as a result of the chaos during the course of the movement.
- ✓ Due to the destruction of crops, food stores and the unsettled life, agriculture declined and famine broke out.

- ✓ The rebellion led to a decline of Kenya's economy since trade and commerce came to a standstill.
- ✓ The rebellion shattered the white settlers' dream of turning Kenya into a settler colony like Rhodesia.
- ✓ Land that had belonged to the Africans before was reclaimed as the British changed the land policy.
- ✓ Africans were allowed to grow cash crops and schools, hospitals; roads were built to cool African tempers.
- ✓ The rebellion led to the emergence of leaders like Jomo Kenyatta, Tom Mboya, Daniel Arap Moi e.t.c who spear headed the independence struggle in Kenya.
- ✓ Political parties were formed and allowed to operate e.g. K.A.N.U (Kenya African National Union) and this spear headed the campaign for self rule or independence.
- ✓ The rebellion created a period of confusion and uncertainty among the people e.g. between 1952 – 1960, Kenya was in a state of emergency.
- ✓ The British came to good terms with Africans. From this time, African interests gained supremacy over Asian and white settler interests.

✓ Both Africans and Europeans lost their lives during the rebellion.

Why did the Africans lose against the British in the rebellion?

- Europeans were military superior compared to Africans they had better guns while Africans used traditional weapons like spears, bows and arrows.
- Disunity among African societies also weakened their struggle against the imposition of colonial rule and therefore they could not form a united front against the colonialists.
- The teachings of the Christian missionaries weakened African societies. They softened the hearts and minds of Africans to the extent that some could not see the need to fight the whites.
- Collaborators who supported colonial powers also weakened those resisting because they used to leak information to the colonialists.
- Many African societies were hit by diseases The Kikuyu, Maasai, Nandi were for example hit by rinder pest, long periods of drought and famine that

weakened them and therefore made their fights against European rule ineffective.

- Poor military tactics. African societies lacked military strategies.
- Many African chiefs were ignorant of the intentions of the Europeans. They thought that the whites were just visitors who were here for only a short period and as such took them to be their friends.
- The Spirit of nationalism was lacking in many African societies at the time. Many rebellions were therefore tribal or regional wars, lacking the support of their neighbours.
- The weak economies of many African societies contributed to their defeat. Many of these couldn't support full- scale wars.
- Too much belief in superstition and traditional religion also blind folded Africans.
- The death and imprisonment of inspirational leaders also undermined African rebellions.
- The Europeans also employed the divide and rule policy whereby they played one society against the other.

Revision questions

1. How did the following respond to colonial rule in East Africa?

(a) Semei Kakungulu **(b)** Nuwa Mbaguta **(c)** Laibon Lenana **(d)** Sir Apollo Kaggwa

2. a) Why did some African societies collaborate with Europeans ?

b) What were the effects of their collaboration?

3. a) Why did some African societies resist colonial rule in East Africa?

b) Why did African resistance against colonial imposition fail?

4. How did the following respond to colonial rule in East Africa?

a) Chief **Mkwawa b**) **Abushiri C)** Rwoth **Awich d)** Kabaka **Mwanga e)** Omukama **Kabalega**

5. a)Why did Semei Kakungulu collaborate with the British colonialists before 1914?

b) What were the results/effects/outcomes of his collaboration?

6. a) What were the causes of the MAU-MAU uprising in Kenya?

b) Describe the organization/course of the uprising?

7. a) Why did the Kikuyu stage a rebellion between 1952 to 1960?

b) How did this rebellion affect Kenya up to independence?

8. a) Describe the course of the struggle that took place in central Kenya in the 1950s.

b) Why did the Europeans emerge victorious over the Africans?

9. a) What were the causes of the uprising in Southern Tanganyika between 1905-1907?

b) How did it affect the peoples of Southern Tanganyika up to independence?

10. a) Describe the course/organization of the Maji-Maji revolt of 1905-07.

b) What reasons led to the failure of the revolt?

11. a) Describe the response of the Nandi to the imposition of colonial rule in their area?

b) What were the effects of their response to colonial rule?

12. a) What were the causes of the Nandi uprisings of 1895 to 1906?

b) Why were the Nandi able to resist the British for so long?

13. a) Why did it take the British so long to defeat the Nandi?

b) Why were the Nandi finally colonized by the British?

14. a) What were the causes of Chief Mkwawa's resistance against German rule?

b) What were the effects of his resistance?

15. a) Why was there a rebellion in southern Tanganyika between 1890-1898?

b) Describe the course of the rebellion during that period.

16. a) What were the reasons for the failure of the Hehe rebellion?

b) How did it affect the affairs of Tanganyika up to independence?

17. a) Describe the course/organization of the Abushiri revolt between 1888-1890.

b) What problems did Abushiri face during this revolt?

18. a) What were the causes of the rebellion along the coast of Tanganyika between 1888-1890?

b) How did it affect the peoples of Tanganyika up to independence?

19. a) Why were the Germans able to suppress the Abushiri revolt of 1888-1890?

b) What were the effects of this revolt on the affairs of Tanganyika?

POLITICAL DEVELOPMENTS IN EAST AFRICA

BUGANDA AGREEMENT OF 1900

- This was the agreement that was signed between the British special commissioner Sir Harry Johnston and the young Kabaka Daudi Chwa II.
- The Kabaka was represented by three regents i.e. Sir Apollo Kaggwa, Stanslus Mugwanya and Zakaria Kisingiri.
- The agreement was signed on 10th March 1900.
- At first it was called the Uganda agreement but since it only applied to Buganda, it came to be known as Buganda agreement.

Why the agreement was signed

- The agreement was intended to define the position of Buganda within a wider Uganda i.e. that Buganda was also a province like other provinces in Uganda.
- The agreement was to confirm that Buganda had submitted to British rule i.e. that there was to be no resistance from the Baganda.
- The agreement was also intended to make Buganda safe for missionary activities especially after the religious wars that had de-stabilized Buganda.
- The agreement was also intended to promote British exploitation policies i.e. to prepare the ground for the effective exploitation of Uganda resources.
- The agreement was signed to introduce the rule of law in a country that had under gone a lot of political turmoil e.g the religious wars in Buganda 1880 – 1890.
- The agreement was also signed to check on the activities of Kabaka Mwanga who still had interest especially in destabilizing the protectorate from Northern Uganda.
- The agreement was signed to end the threats of Sudanese mutineers in the north i.e. they had become notorious demanding a lot of money from the British who had hired them in 1897.

- The agreement was also intended to find a suitable way to both the Baganda and the British on how to assist the young Kabaka Daudi Chwa II.
- The agreement was signed to make Buganda self reliant through introducing economic reforms e.g. cash crops growing and payment of taxes.
- The agreement was intended to reward the Baganda for their support and co-operation with the British in the extension of colonial rule e.g. Buganda was given the two lost counties that belonged to Bunyoro (Bugangaizi and Buyaga) in Mubende.
- The agreement was signed to solve the boundary problems between Uganda and her neighbours especially Bunyoro.
- The agreement was signed to make a spring board or the starting point from where the rest of Uganda would be colonized.
- The agreement was to serve as a legal document that would protect and safe guard the British imperialist interests in Uganda.
- The three regents who signed on behalf of the young Kabaka Daudi Chwa were ignorant and only interested

in material benefits e.g. land and titles like Sir Apollo Kaggwa.

Terms/provisions of the agreement

- All men of 18yrs and above were to pay a hut tax of 3 rupees which was to be collected by local chiefs.
- No more taxes were to be collected without the approval of the Lukiiko and the consent of the Kabaka.
- Revenue from the taxes was to be for the protectorate government and not the Kabaka, like before.
- The collection of tributes from neighbouring states like Busoga, Ankole, and Toro by Buganda was to be stopped immediately.
- All chiefs including the Kabaka were to receive a monthly salary like other civil servants in the protectorate government.
- All natural resources like minerals and forests were to be in the hands of the protectorate government and it was its duty to exploit them.
- Land was to be divided into two i.e. Mailo land was to be given to the Kabaka and his subjects while crown land was to be given to the protectorate government.

- Peasants settling on this land were to pay rent (Busuulu) to the landlords and the Kabaka was to appoint chiefs to look after his mailo land.
- Crown land included forests, lakes, swamps and the people who settled on this land were not to pay rent or Busuulu.
- The Kabaka was to be retained as the supreme ruler of Buganda but with the title of his highness.
- The Kabaka was to rule under close supervision of a British representative and he was to be assisted by three regents i.e. Katikiro (Prime Minister), Muwanika (Treasurer) and Mulamuzi (Judge).
- The Lukiiko was to have parliamentary powers, to formulate laws and to remain the highest court of appeal.
- The Kabaka was not to dismiss any member of the Lukiiko without consulting the British government.
- Membership to the Lukiiko was to be fixed at 89 and of these 60 were notables, 20 Ssaza chiefs, 3 regents / ministers and 6 Kabaka's nominees.
- Cases involving foreigners were not to be decided upon by the Kabaka but handled by the protectorate government.

- The Kabaka was not to form an army without the consent of the protectorate government.
- Buganda's boundaries were to be redefined and the two lost counties of Buyaga and Bugangaizi that previously belonged to Bunyoro were to be added to Buganda.
- Buganda was to be divided into 20 counties each under a Ssaza or county chief.
- In case of misunderstanding the terms of the agreement, the protectorate government had the right to abrogate or cancel the agreement.

Effects of the agreement

- ✓ The Kabaka's powers were greatly reduced e.g. he lost authority over the army and tax collection.
- ✓ The agreement made Buganda part of Uganda and it placed Buganda at the same level with other provinces in Uganda.
- ✓ The Kabaka lost control over his chiefs who became public servants and were paid by the protectorate government.

- ✓ Buganda's 20 counties were allocated on a religious basis i.e. protestants were given 10, Catholics got 8 and Moslems 2.
- ✓ The agreement re-defined the boundaries of Buganda to include the two lost counties of Buyaga and Bugangaizi which were got from Bunyoro.
- ✓ The loss of the two counties led/increased Bunyoro's hostility to Buganda.
- ✓ The Buganda agreement laid a foundation for the signing of similar agreements with others areas e.g. Toro agreement in June 1900, Ankole agreement 1901.
- ✓ The agreement confirmed and formalized British rule over Buganda and Uganda as a whole which meant that Buganda had lost its independence.
- ✓ The agreement encouraged the growing of cash crops like tea, coffee and cotton because people had to pay taxes.
- ✓ The hut tax also forced people to crowd in one hut so as to avoid paying the tax and this led to the spread of diseases like dysentery.

- ✓ The agreement began the exploitation of Uganda's resources like minerals and forests as a way of raising funds for the protectorate government.
- ✓ After the agreement, some Baganda decided to collaborate with the British to extend colonial rule in Uganda e.g. Semei Kakungulu and John Miti.
- ✓ The agreement also encouraged the development of roads, schools, hospitals as a way of tapping Uganda's economic potential.
- ✓ The Kabaka lost control over the land in Buganda which increased on the number of white settlers grabbing land in Buganda.
- ✓ The agreement ended the religious wars which had destabilized Buganda during the reign of Kabaka Mwanga.

THE 1953 KABAKA CRISIS

- This was a political misunderstanding between the Governor of Uganda-Sir Andrew Cohen and the Kabaka of Buganda-Muteesa II.
- It involved a lot of tension, mistrust and suspicion between these two gentlemen.

- This tension resulted into the deportation of Muteesa II to England on 30th November 1953.
- Kabaka Muteesa II had failed to cooperate loyally with the British as the 1900 agreement demanded.
- This created a non-violent but very tense and confused situation in Buganda that is popularly known as the '***Kabaka crisis' of 1953.***

Causes of the crisis

❖ Buganda was demanding for federalism and special status so that she would not be at the same level with other regions of Uganda which the colonial gov't opposed.

❖ In 1945, three Africans were chosen to join the Legco to make constitutional changes. Buganda, Ankole and Busoga were all supposed to send one representative each, but Buganda refused and demanded for more seats because she didn't want to be at the same level with other regions.

❖ The Kabaka also supported the Lukiiko's decision not to send a representative to the Legco and this annoyed the governor who wanted a united Uganda leading to the deportation of the Kabaka.

- In 1952, a colonial gov't expert A.C Willis researched and emphasized the need to set up local councils in Uganda and resist federalism which didn't go down well with the Baganda.
- The Baganda were also worried about the developments in the Legislative council which was turning into a ***small national assembly*** for all races, tribes and regions of Uganda and this threatened the power of Buganda as a semi-independent state within a wider Uganda.
- The Baganda also feared for their power because this would mean that the colonial gov't would win over any vote of confidence over Buganda.
- The formation of Uganda National Congress (UNC) on 2nd march 1952 by Ignatius Kangave Musaazi also led to the crisis. The party called for unity amongst all Ugandans to demand for independence which the Baganda saw as threat to the institution of the Kabaka.
- The Baganda were also alarmed by the colonial government's demands for the East African federation which Buganda didn't like because they didn't want to merge with other regions of East Africa.

- The Kabaka also received a lot of support about this issue from his subjects, the Lukiiko and other provinces like Busoga who also opposed the idea and this also worsened Muteesa's relationship with Sir Andrew Cohen.
- The governor was also angered by Buganda's demands to be transferred from the colonial office to the foreign office which showed no confidence in the abilities of the governor.
- On 30th November 1952, the British stopped recognizing the Kabaka and later deported him to London in 1953.
- The British wanted to fulfill the demands of the 1900 Buganda which had stated that the institution of the Kabaka would be abolished if at all he failed to cooperate with the British and this is what sparked off the crisis.
- The Kabaka was ill advised and he showed stubbornness to the governor even after a series of meetings were held with the governor and this led to his deportation in 1953.
- The Baganda refused to choose a successor to Muteesa II after his deportation in 1953, contrary what

the governor had thought and they only voiced one point ***'We want our Kabaka back"***

Effects of the Kabaka crisis

- ✓ Following the deportation of the Kabaka in 1953, a state of emergency was declared in Buganda.
- ✓ Several Baganda elites were sent to England to plead for Muteesa's return e.g. Eridadi Muriira, Thomas Makumbi and Apollo Kironde.
- ✓ In early 1954, a constitutional expert-**Sir Keith Hancock** was sent to Uganda to see how a new constitution would be quickly made to return sanity to Buganda.
- ✓ It led to the signing of the **1955 Namirembe agreement** which altered the 1900 agreement e.g. the Kabakaship became a constitutional monarch.
- ✓ It was also agreed that the Buganda was to remain part of Uganda and it was to elect members to the Legco like other regions.
- ✓ The crisis affected the formation of the East African federation because this act by the Baganda clearly showed that some sections of the people didn't want it.

- ✓ The crisis caused a lot of resentment from the Baganda following the deportation of their Kabaka e.g. Baganda men allowed their beards grow wild and they wore bark cloth as a sign of mourning.
- ✓ The crisis resulted into riots in Buganda and increased demands for British withdrawal from Buganda's soils.
- ✓ The crisis led to the violation of the 1900 Buganda agreement by both the British and Baganda e.g. Britain stopped recognizing the Kabaka and Buganda wanted independence outside the protectorate.
- ✓ The Namirembe agreement also resolved that Muteesa was to return if the Lukiiko had invited him and on **17th October 1955**, Muteesa returned amidst jubilation from his people.
- ✓ The crisis resulted in Buganda's boycott of the 1961 National Assembly elections and fresh elections were organized in 1962.
- ✓ The crisis led to the formation of political parties in Uganda for example **Democratic Party in 1956** and **Uganda Peoples' Congress in 1960.**
- ✓ The formation of political parties also forced the Buganda loyalists to form their own political party

called **Kabaka Yekka (K.Y)** literally meaning king alone, to strongly support the Kabaka's position.

✓ The crisis speeded up the political developments in Uganda that resulted into the attainment of independence on **9th October 1962.**

DEVONSHIRE WHITE PAPER (1923)

- This was a statement of government policy issued in March 1923 during a conference in London by the colonial secretary, who was also the Duke of Devonshire.
- From 1896, white settlers started flocking into Kenya while the Asians came during and after the construction of the Uganda Railway.
- Inevitably, between 1907 and 1923 bitter conflicts arose between the three groups i.e. Asians, white settlers and the Africans due to their different demands and interests.

Reasons for the declaration of the Devonshire White Paper

Asians (Indians)

- The Asians wanted equal representation on the L.E.G.CO (Legislative council) i.e. the Asians outnumbered the white settlers yet the white settlers had more seats on the LEGCO.
- Racial segregation also hurt the Asians e.g. they wanted equal treatment with the whites in politics, health, education, business e.t.c.
- The Asians also wanted unrestricted immigrations into Kenya i.e. they wanted free entry and exit into and out of Kenya.
- They also wanted to acquire land from the fertile Kenyan highlands i.e. the white settlers had forced the Asians to stay in towns which they did not like.
- Asians had formed associations like the East African Indian National Congress led by A.M Jeevanjee which became a plat form for airing out their grievances against the white settlers.

Africans

- The Africans demanded for the withdrawal of the Kipande (Identity cards) that made them look like prisoners in their own country.

- Africans wanted a reduction in taxes which had suffocated them yet many of them had nowhere to get the money.
- African also wanted good labour conditions e.g. many of them were forced to work on European farms with little or no pay at all.
- Africans like the Kikuyu and the Maasai wanted all the land that had been taken away from them returned by the white settlers
- Africans also wanted to regain their independence that had been eroded by the British.
- Africans also demanded for similar education opportunities which they had been denied by the whites in order to keep them backward.
- Africans also wanted representation in government because they had been totally left out in politics.
- Africans were also restricted from growing cash crops by the whites who claimed that they were going to lower the quality of the Kenyan produce.
- The Africans also formed tribal organizations e.g. the Young Kikuyu Association and the Young Kavirondo Association which became plat forms for airing out their views.

White settlers

- The white settlers wanted to monopolize politics of Kenya e.g. by 1920, they had more seats /majority seats on the legislative council but they were not contented.
- They believed in racial superiority and they didn't want to share social services with Africans and Asians e.g. health, education e.t.c
- The white settlers wanted to retain the fertile Kenyan highlands exclusively for themselves.
- The Europeans settlers also wanted the colonial government to discourage Africans from growing cash crops so that they could only serve as laborers on the European farms.
- The white settlers wanted to colonize Kenya as a separate colony from England i.e. they wanted Kenya to be declared Independent from England.
- The whites were also led by lord Delamare and colony Grogan who set up a number of associations to serve as plat form for airing out their views.

Terms/provisions of the Devonshire White Paper

- ❖ The Kenyan highlands were to be exclusively reserved for the white settlers only.
- ❖ The legislative council was to have eleven (11) Europeans, five (5) Asians (Indians), 1 Arab and a missionary to represent African interests.
- ❖ There were to be no more restrictions on Asian immigration or entry into Kenya.
- ❖ A missionary i.e. Dr. Arthur was to be nominated to the legislative council to represent the interest of the Africans.
- ❖ There was to be no more racial segregation or discrimination in all residential areas.
- ❖ Africans were to be members of the local councils and not in politics at a higher level.
- ❖ Asians and African representatives on the Legislative council were not to be on the same voters registers as the whites.
- ❖ The colonial office in London was to watch over the Kenyan Affairs in order for the interests of the Africans to be given first priority.
- ❖ The paper clearly stated that Kenya was primarily an African territory and the interests of the Africans were paramount or very important.

- ❖ The paper made it clear that all racial groups in Kenya were to work together and gradually move towards the achievement of self rule or independence.
- ❖ The paper also warned against the white settlers wanting to make further advances towards self rule.
- ❖ The paper was to rule out any constitutional changes in favor of the white settlers.
- ❖ The paper also stated that the white settlers would no longer have controlling influence on the colonial government but it was the government that was to serve their interests.

Effects of the Devonshire white paper

- ➢ The Asians failed to win equality with the white e.g. they were denied the right to occupy the Kenyan highlands and were given only five seats on the LEGCO and they had to use a different voters register.
- ➢ The white settlers lost their dream of even controlling Kenya as a separate colony.
- ➢ The paper confirmed Kenya as a settler colony which increased the number of Europeans coming into Kenya.

- The paper also confirmed that Kenya was for Kenyans and that, their interests were to be given first priority.
- The paper also clarified that neither the whites nor the Asians would gain monopoly in the administration of Kenya whatsoever.
- The giving of the highlands to settlers stimulated plantation farming and led to the growth of cash crop economy.
- The paper failed to address the land and labour problems i.e. Africans were to continue providing labour on settler farms.
- The free immigration policy resulted in many Indians pouring into Kenya and they became a major force in Kenya's economy.
- The paper also laid the foundation for the future independence struggles of Kenya e.g. armed groups like Mau- Mau were formed by the Africans.
- The paper exposed the intentions of the white settlers in Kenya who were after taking over the country.
- The paper created unity among Africans and Asians because it affected them equally.

- Africans started sharing in the running of their country. E.g. the native councils and in 1931 they were allowed to send representatives to the Legco.
- The colonial government started training and educating Africans, a measure that was intended to prepare them for the future responsibilities and independence.

THE WHITE SETTLERS IN KENYA

- The Europeans begun to settle in Kenya in 1896 and large number came in 1903.
- They mainly came from New Zealand, Britain, South Africa, Australia and Canada.
- Their aim was to set up plantation farms.

Reasons for their coming

- The climatic conditions especially in Kenyan highlands were good, cool, and conducive for European settlement.
- Very few Africans had settled in the high lands and this is perhaps why settlers settled in such areas in large numbers.

- ❖ The Devonshire white paper of 1923 that gave the Kenya highlands exclusively to the whites also encouraged them to come to Kenya in large numbers.
- ❖ Kenya had strategic advantage i.e. it had direct access to the Indian Ocean waters and a well developed transport network.
- ❖ The construction of the Uganda railway line reduced transport costs and provided them with a reason to come and exploit resources in Kenya.
- ❖ The nomadic way of life of the some of the Kenyan tribes like the Nandi, Maasai and Kikuyu also made it easy for the settlers to obtain land.
- ❖ The colonial policy was clear that Kenya should be a settler colony which officially encouraged settlers to come in large numbers.
- ❖ Many of the governors in Kenya were too lenient and sympathetic to settler demands e.g. Sir Charles Elliot (1902-1904), Sir Donald Stewart (1904 – 1905).
- ❖ During the Anglo-Boer wars (1899 – 1902) in south Africa, a number of African farms were destroyed which forced many settlers to rush to East Africa expecting to find the same prospects.

- ❖ The earlier reports made by the explorers also encouraged the settlers to come e.g. they reported about the fertile soils and reliable rainfall in Kenyan high lands.
- ❖ After World War 1 in 1919, there was a need to resettle ex soldiers and therefore many of them ended up in Kenya as settlers.
- ❖ The desire to stop inhuman acts of slave trade and introduce legitimate trade also encouraged many whites to come to Kenya.
- ❖ Many Africans were poor and were willing to work on settler farms and therefore the white settlers came to Kenya to exploit the idle and unskilled African labour force.
- ❖ Charismatic leaders like Lord Delamare also encouraged settler farming because he was a successful farmer and encouraged many settlers to grow cash crops.

Problems faced by White settlers in Kenya

- Settler farming faced strong opposition from Africans e.g. the Maasai and Nandi constantly raided the white settler farms.

- The world economic depression after World War 1 greatly affected the white settlers as their crops lost market because of the low prices.
- Diseases also frustrated the settlers e.g. the cows were attacked by East coast fever and tick borne disease while wheat was attacked by leaf rust.
- The white settlers lacked funds to carry out large scale farming e.g. some were too poor to buy land or even pay workers.
- Some crops like tea and rubber required large estates which the settlers could not get easily.
- In some areas the soils were infertile due to mineral deficiency which also led to low output.
- The colonial government paid less attention to the problems of the settlers because it was only interested in reducing costs of administration.
- A lot of time was wasted by the white settlers on the experimental growing of some crops e.g. rubber.
- There was competition from imported products e.g. wheat was imported on a large scale.
- Labour was not enough mainly because Africans were not willing to work on European farms.

- Poor transport also affected settler farming in Kenya e.g. many parts were not connected to the railway line.
- Most of the Kenyan land was barren and unproductive e.g. in Maasai land.
- There was theft of settler food by the Pastoral tribes like Nandi, Maasai and Turkana.
- Tropical diseases that affected the settlers like Malaria, Sleeping sickness e.t.c.

Effects/role of white settlers in Kenya's economic development

✓ The white settlers introduced plantation agriculture i.e. Cash crop, economy in Kenya like Pyrethrum, rubber, wheat.

✓ Settler farming stimulated the development of communication net works e.g. roads were built and Uganda railway line extended to areas like Kitale.

✓ The growing of cash crops also led to the development of modern and scientific methods of farming e.g. use of fertilizers and setting up large fenced farms.

✓ Because of increased business activities, modern towns and trading centers like Nairobi developed.

- ✓ The introduction of plantation agriculture enabled the Kenyans to shift from substance farming to large scale farming which brought in more money.
- ✓ With increased agriculture, small scale industrialization took place e.g. 1906; UNGA Limited established a grain mill in Nairobi.
- ✓ The settlers introduced the rearing of exotic animals in Kenya e.g. exotic sheep, cattle and pigs were imported from New Zealand and Britain.
- ✓ A lot of land that was previously idle was put to good use by the settlers who established large farms for cash crops and rearing of animals.
- ✓ The establishment of the plantation farms created more employment opportunities for the Africans who improved on their standards of living.
- ✓ The growing of cash crops disrupted the traditional African patterns of farming i.e. African started growing crops they were not going to eat.
- ✓ Because plantation farming was in the hands of the white settlers, the economy of Kenya was therefore put in the hands of the whites.
- ✓ Africans lost much of their lands particularly the Kikuyu, Kamba, and Maasai.

- ✓ The white settlers dominated the politics of Kenya which caused political problems and this resulted into the 1923 Devonshire white paper declaration.
- ✓ The movement of Africans with in Kenya was restricted by the colonial government which led to the introduction of identity cards (Kipande).
- ✓ African loss of land and segregation tendencies of the whites led to the formation of nationalistic movements like Mau Mau.

Economic and social developments in Kenya between 1900-1945

- ➢ Cash crop development was linked much to the white settlers who occupied the Kenya highlands.
- ➢ The first crops to be grown were maize for cash and potatoes for food.
- ➢ Lord Delamere experimented wheat farming in the Uasin-Gishu plateau where he produced the first wheat crop successfully in 1907.
- ➢ In 1904, tea was introduced at Limuru and sisal was planted at Thika.
- ➢ By 1920, sisal had become the second most important plantation crop.

- Rubber was also grown on plantations near the coast.
- Tomatoes and cape good berries were also grown.
- Africans grew crops which they were familiar with e.g. simsim and groundnuts.
- In 1904, the policy of reserves was began where Africans had to supply labour and were not to grow cash crops.
- In 1908, Coffee Planters' Association was formed where coffee trees were got from missionaries.
- Lord Delamere later introduced coffee growing near Thika.
- By 1920, large tea estates were established around Nakuru.
- In 1925, two companies from India were set up on the large tea plantations at Kericho.
- Between 1920 to 1921, the government encouraged maize growing.
- In 1935, pyrethrum was grown in the Kenyan highlands.
- Vegetables and fruits were also introduced in the Mau hills.

- Communication included railway lines, roads, telegraphs and waterways.
- Kenya-Uganda railway began in 1896 at Mombasa and extended to several parts of Kenya.
- In 1921, the railway line extended from Nakuru to Eldoret and Kitale then to Uganda.
- Within Kenya, the railway lines extended to Nyeri, Nanyuki, Thompson falls and Magadi.
- Feeder roads were constructed to supply or feed the railway stations with goods to be transported.
- Harbour at Mombasa developed due to easy communication by road and railway.
- Lake steamer service on Lake Victoria was established which boosted trade.
- Major ports like Kisumu, Jinja, Port Bell, Entebbe, Bukoba, Mwanza and Musoma were established and this boosted water transport.
- By 1930, Kenya's internal and international communication services had been established.

Contribution of Lord Delamere to the economic development of Kenya

- His real name was Hugh Cholmondeley.

- He first came to Kenya in 1897 on a hunting expedition.
- He probably came from South Africa and was attracted by the great potential of the country.
- He was a product of white settler influence in Kenya.
- The white settlers increased in Kenya as a result of the construction of the Uganda railway.
- He later returned in 1903 to settle in the Kenyan highlands which were suitable for white settlement.
- Lord Delamere was determined to make farming a success in Kenya and therefore worked hard for its development.
- He acquired land at Njoro and around Lake Elmenteita for the development of agriculture in Kenya.
- He spent his personal effort and money on agricultural experiments in Kenya.
- He experimented on various types of wheat in the above areas.
- Lord Delamere also experimented on various breeds of exotic livestock in Kenya e.g. the Freshian.
- Delamere spent a lot of money trying to control diseases and climatic problems in Kenya.

- Through research, he was able to contain the 'rust' disease which threatened wheat in Kenya.
- He imported pigs, sheep and cattle although many of them died of the East Coast Fever.
- He carried out cross-breeding of exotic and local animals which promoted the resistance of the animals.
- In 1907, he produced his first successful wheat crop.
- He also developed crops like tea, sisal, coffee and maize.
- He was instrumental in the formation of ''Master-servants ordinance'' of 1906 that was where Europeans were the masters and Africans were the servants.
- The ordinance made African interests secondary to the European interests in Kenya.
- Lord Delamere was active in settler politics and led the European settler delegation to the Devonshire White Paper discussion in 1923.
- He later died in 193 during the period of the Great Economic Depression.

Revision questions

1. a) Why was the 1900 Buganda agreement signed?

b) What were the results/significances/effects of this agreement?

2. a) Describe the **TERMS,CLAUSES,PROVISIONS** of the 1900 Buganda agreement?

b) How did it affect the affairs in Uganda up to independence?

3. a) Explain the factors which led to the issuing of the 1923 Devonshire white paper.

b) Why is this paper still remembered in the history of East Africa?

4. a) What were the causes of conflict between the various races in Kenya between 1907 – 1923?

b) How did the Duke of Devonshire settle these conflicts?

5. a) Describe the **Terms,Clauses,Provisions** of the 1923 Devonshire white paper.

b) What were the effects of the paper?

6. a) Why did the settlers send Asian and European delegations to the colonial secretary in 1923?

b) What were the outcomes of their journey?

7. a) What led to the racial differences between the Europeans and Asians in Kenya between 1907 -1923?

b) How did the Duke of Devonshire settle these differences?

8. a) What were the causes of the Kabaka crisis of 1953 – 1955?

b) What were the results of this crisis?

9. a) What led to the conflict between the British and the Baganda between 1953 – 1955?

b) What were the effects of this crisis on Buganda up to independence?

10. Describe the role played by the following in the history of East Africa;

(a)**Sir Hesketh Bell** (b) **Lord Delamere** (c) **Sir Donald Cameron**

11. a) Why did Uganda receive few white settlers? **OR** Why didn't Uganda develop into a settler colony?

b) Why was Kenya developed into a settler colony?

12. a) What problems did the white settler communities encounter in Kenya?

b) Describe the role of the white settlers in the development of the economy of Kenya up to 1945.

13. a) What factors led to the rise of settler communities in Kenya in the late 19th century?

b) What were the effects of their activities on the Africans in Kenya?

THE UGANDA RAILWAY

- This was the railway line that was built from Mombasa (Kilindini) harbour at the coast of Kenya through Kenya to Kampala and then extended to other parts of Uganda.
- Construction began on 30th May 1896 and Sir George White House was the chief engineer.
- Labour was mainly provided by the Indian Coolies.

- From the start, the line was called the Uganda railway because the British wanted to effectively exploit the economic resources of Uganda since Kenya offered less prospects.

Reasons for the construction of the Uganda railway

- The British constructed the line to establish effective control over Uganda and Kenya.
- The railway line also intended to ease the transportation of Military personnel, Colonialists, arms or weapons and administrators in Uganda.
- The line was built purposely to open the interior for trade and commerce i.e. to enable East Africa carry out trade with the outside world.
- The line was built to help in the elimination of Slave trade because it would enable the abolitionists move into the interior of Uganda and Kenya.
- The line was meant to encourage cash crop growing like cotton, tea e.t.c which would lead to the economic development of Kenya and Uganda.
- The line was built to provide a cheaper quicker and easier means of transport to replace the slave trade that involved moving long distances on foot.

- The line was constructed to ease the work and movement of the missionaries who wanted to spread Christianity and civilize Africans
- The British built the line in order to conform to the doctrine of effective occupation as demanded by the Berlin conference of 1884 – 1885.
- The line was also constructed in order to stop other powers like the Egyptians who had also shown interest in controlling Uganda because of the source of the River Nile.
- The British wanted to provide employment opportunities for the people of Uganda and Kenya through the construction of the railway e.g. people were to be employed as cleaners, mechanics and in the loading and off loading sections.
- The line was constructed because the Imperial British East Africa company (IBEACO), had recommended it and it had even surveyed its route.
- The line was intended to make Uganda and Kenya self reliant and enable them to pay for their own administration.
- After the signing of the second Anglo – German agreement of 1890 (Heligoland treaty), the British had

no fear of investing their money in Uganda and that's why the line was constructed.

- ❖ The line was intended to open up the remote areas of E.Africa to develop them into urban centres.
- ❖ It was constructed to link the landlocked Uganda to the East African coast.

Extension of the Uganda railway (1896 – 1965)

- The idea of building the railway line was introduced by William MacKinnon of IBEACO.
- In 1892, a survey of the route was done.
- On 30th May 1896, the project eventually began at Kilindini (Mombasa).
- Sir George white house was the Chief engineer.
- Over 32,000 Indian coolies were recruited for the job since Africans were not interested in the work.
- In 1898, the railway line had reached Voi.
- By 30th June 1899, the line had reached Nairobi and this is where the central store of materials was located.
- By 1900, the line had reached Nakuru.

- By 20th December 1901, it had advanced to Kisumu where it was connected to Uganda through a steamer service ship (ferry) across Lake Victoria.
- In 1913, the Nairobi-Thika line was extended to the European farms of Nyeri and Nyahururu.
- From 1921, there was a major expansion of the line in Kenya e.g. in 1926 the Nakuru to Solai line was constructed and then it was extended to Eldoret during the same period.
- In 1913, the Naivasha-Gilgil-Thomson's falls line was also constructed.
- From Eldoret, the line was extended to Kitale to the European farms in the area.

IN UGANDA

- From Kisumu where the line had reached in 1901, it was connected to Uganda through a regular steamer service (ferry) across Lake Victoria to Port Bell.
- In 1912, Sir Hesketh Bell built the line that connected Kampala to Port Bell to reduce on congestion at the port.

- In the same year (1912), the Jinja –Namasagali line was constructed to encourage cotton growing in Busoga.
- In 1928, the Namasagali-Tororo line was constructed to tap mineral potentials and cotton.
- From Tororo, the line was connected to Eldoret in Kenya to reduce on the congestion at Port Bell.
- In 1929, the Tororo - Soroti line was constructed through Mbale to encourage cotton and coffee growing and enable the transportation of cattle.
- In 1931, the line crossed the Nile and reached Kampala.
- This was to ease the transportation of goods like coffee from the East to Kampala.
- In 1956, the Kampala – Kasese line was constructed to transport copper from Kilembe mines to Jinja for smelting.
- In the 1960's, soroti was connected to Lira then to Gulu to transport cotton, simsim and cattle.
- By1965, the line had reached Pakwach to transport tobacco, simsim, Cotton and coffee from Northern Uganda.

Problems faced during the construction of the railway line

- Physical obstacles like forests, steep relief, steep escarpments of the rift valley and rivers caused engineering problems especially in Kenya.
- Wild animals like Lions in the Tsavo region of Kenya delayed the projects as people feared and failed to work for over a month.
- Hostile African tribes also made the construction difficult e.g. the Nandi stole the construction materials before disappearing into their hills.
- The harsh climate like heavy rains and scorching sun also made the construction work very difficult.
- Labour shortage mainly because most Africans were not interested in constructing the railway line.
- The British resorted to the Indian coolies who were very weak and they caused unnecessary delays.
- Tropical diseases like Malaria, jiggers and small pox also proved to be a problem because they claimed the lives of many Indian Coolies.
- Inadequate funds also made the construction work difficult because the cost of the line was too high i.e.

the British spent about 8 million pounds and yet the initial budget was 2 million pounds.

- The constructors faced hostility from the Germans who frequently attacked the line e.g. at Voi in order to make the constructors' work very difficult.
- Lack of food was another big problem because the constructors had to depend on supplies from Europe.
- Language barrier also affected the construction because the British, Africans and Coolies couldn't easily communicate with each other.
- There was also lack of communication between the constructors and the colonial office in London where orders were supposed to come from.
- There was a problem of poor transport and communication especially when it came to transporting heavy construction materials with in East Africa.
- Lack of co-operation between the railway authority and local leaders was also a problem e.g. the local leaders accused builders for not consulting them.
- British engineers were very few and this always led to acts of indiscipline, disorder and wastefulness on the part of the Coolies.

- Inadequate port facilities in Mombasa caused a problem because it was difficult to off load heavy rail way machinery.

Effects of the Uganda railway

- ✓ Transport and communication from the interior to the coast was made easy for example a journey that used to take months was now covered in a week.
- ✓ The line stimulated economic growth and promoted international and local trade e.g. agricultural products could now be exported using the railway.
- ✓ The construction of the line stimulated the growing of cash crops e.g. Cotton, Coffee and Tobacco.
- ✓ Towns developed especially along the railway routes e.g. Kisumu, Nakuru, Voi, Nakuru, Kitale, Tororo, Mbale and Jinja.
- ✓ Construction of the line brought many Indians into E.Africa e.g. a fifth of all the Indian coolies who came to construct the railway remained behind to do business.
- ✓ There was loss of lives especially in areas where the stubborn Africans were refusing the line to pass through their lands e.g. during the Nandi resistance.

- ✓ Construction of the line caused an influx of Europeans into E.Africa who came to do trade and agriculture for example in the Kenyan highlands.
- ✓ Construction of the line created many employment opportunities for many people e.g. station managers, locomotive drivers, engineers, mechanics.
- ✓ The influx of whites and Asians resulted into political conflicts especially in Kenya and this resulted in the Devonshire white paper declaration of March 1923.
- ✓ Construction of the line brought slave trade and human porterage to an end and legitimate trade was introduced.
- ✓ The construction of the line eased the British administration of Uganda and Kenya i.e. troops and administrators were easily transported for supervision.
- ✓ The line speeded the development of feeder roads which connected areas where goods were produced to railway stations.
- ✓ The movement of missionaries with their property was made easy and this led to western civilization and spread of Christianity.

- ✓ The construction of the railway line led to the transfer of Kenya capital from Mombasa in 1907 to Nairobi which was more central.
- ✓ Africans like the Nandi and Masai lost their lands because they originally occupied areas where the line passed
- ✓ Small scale industries e.g. cotton ginneries, copper smelting and coffee processing plants were established to reduce on the bulk of goods for export.

The contribution of Allidina Visram in the economic development of Uganda

- ✓ Aldina Visram was an Indian born in 1863 in India.
- ✓ He came to Uganda as a result of the construction of the Uganda railway.
- ✓ He began his commercial career in Zanzibar in 1870 during the prosperity of the Indian Ocean trade and Long Distance trade.
- ✓ He later moved to the interior of East Africa and set up a base at Bagamoyo.
- ✓ During the progress and development of the railway line inland, he set up commercial posts and centers along the line.

- ✓ He was the most enterprising Indian trader in Uganda of his time.
- ✓ He bought produce from African farmers for sell e.g. cotton, coffee and tobacco.
- ✓ He built cotton ginneries in Uganda e.g. in Kampala tp process the cotton.
- ✓ He lent out money to African and Indian traders in East Africa.
- ✓ He introduced the banking system e.g. he built the National Bank of India and Commerce.
- ✓ He reached Kampala and established himself as a powerful trader by 1898.
- ✓ He opened the first shop in Uganda.
- ✓ He established stations along the river Nile and had agents in Jinja.
- ✓ He organized caravans which were sent between Uganda and the coast.
- ✓ His trade was mainly in the export of ivory and cotton.
- ✓ He acquired a lot of wealth and invested in oil mines, saw mills and a soda factory.
- ✓ He was a kind hearted man who gave out many donations e.g. to Namirembe cathedral.

- ✓ Many streets in Kampala and Jinja were named after him because of his contribution to the economic development of Uganda.

Revision questions

1. a) Why was the Uganda railway constructed?
   b) Explain the **problems/obstacles/difficulties** faced during the construction?

2. a) Describe the development of the railway system in Uganda between 1912 – 1965.
   b) What were the effects of the railway construction?

3. a) To which parts and for what reasons was the Uganda railway extended after 1912?
   b) Show its importance in the development of Uganda in the same period.

4. a) Describe the development of the Uganda railway in Kenya and Uganda between 1896 – 1962.
   b) How did the building of this railway affect the peoples of East Africa?

5. a) Describe the role played by Aldina Visram to the economic development of Uganda.

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENTS IN EAST AFRICA
EDUCATION DEVELOPMENT IN UGANDA

- Before 1920, formal education in Uganda was run by the Christian missionaries.
- Their efforts were mainly concentrated in Buganda.
- Wherever they built a Church they would also set up a dispensary and a grammar School.
- Their main aim was to enable their converts acquire the three Rs – Arithmetic, Reading and writing.
- Their literacy was limited to reading religious books.
- However, by this time, very few African parents were willing to take their children to school.
- From 1900, missionaries introduced formal school education which was run alongside traditional education which they found.
- The aim of this type of education was to create a civil and literate community.
- Those who had this type of formal education could be clerks, interpreters and catechists.

- In 1902, the first school was built called Namilyango College.
- It was mainly children of chiefs and influential families who joined this school.
- In the same year, Mengo High School was also constructed by the church missionary society.
- By 1903, 7,800 girls were attending school.
- The girls' syllabus stressed submissiveness, hard work and good behavior.
- In 1905, a boarding girls' school was opened called Gayaza High School.
- In 1906, King's College Buddo was opened mainly for the sons and relatives of the Kabaka.
- St. Mary's college Kisubi was later opened in 1908.
- More schools were opened up in Masaka, Kamuli, Iganga, Hoima, Gulu and Mbarara.
- Such schools included Ntare School, Mary Hill high school and Kiira College Butiki.
- In these schools, more emphasis was put on religious knowledge, English, geography and arithmetic.
- These schools were run along denominational lines and were headed by reverends, nuns and priests.

- Teacher Training Colleges (T.T.Cs) were later setup, the first at Mukono by the Anglican Church.
- From 1920, the colonial government became interested in controlling education standards in Uganda.
- This was because of the weaknesses found in missionary education e.g. they had neglected technical and industrial education and they had also neglected agriculture and animal husbandry.
- The colonial government thus set up a department of education to guide education in Uganda.

Why the colonial government became interested in controlling education in Uganda

❖ There was need for the colonial government to control the syllabus i.e. what was taught in Schools because each religious denomination only taught what suited their interests.

❖ Missionary Schools only provided Education that was theoretical and not practical therefore irrelevant to the needs of the Africans.

- ❖ Missionaries had neglected animal husbandry and agriculture in their Schools yet the economy was based on agriculture.
- ❖ Mission Schools were also too many but with poor conditions for example hygiene was very poor and this called for the colonial government to come in and fund these Schools.
- ❖ Missionaries had also found it very expensive to shoulder education alone and this therefore called for government funding.
- ❖ The government also wanted to create a good impression of itself in public hence it's increased funding of education.
- ❖ The colonial government had by 1920 accumulated funds through taxation, revenue from cash crops and the Uganda railway and therefore this provided funds to invest in education.
- ❖ The colonial government had also finished setting up the necessary infrastructures like roads, Uganda railway, Hospitals and therefore it had to start investing in Education.
- ❖ There was also need for the government to continuously inspect the mission Schools to ensure

that the syllabus was good, hygiene was improved and schools were properly staffed.

- ❖ Schools were run on religious differences and therefore the colonial government had to come in to remove the differences.
- ❖ Muslims had been neglected in provision of the education services and therefore the government had to come in.
- ❖ There was need to promote girl child education because missionary education had neglected girls.
- ❖ Government had also realized the need for education in development to create a civil class of skilled labour force.
- ❖ There was need to reduce illiteracy country wide especially in the rural areas because most Schools were in Buganda and in urban centres.
- ❖ There was need to create a class of teachers who were Africans because they knew the problems affecting their own people.
- ❖ Availability of scholarships from various institutions abroad e.g. Cambridge which called for government selection of Students.

- ❖ There was also need to improve on communication between the colonialists and the local people hence improvements in education had to be done by the colonial government.

How the government became involved in managing education after 1922

- ➢ Before 1920, education was in the hands of missionaries.
- ➢ Schools were opened and run by missionaries and evangelism was their main purpose.
- ➢ From 800 pounds in 1920, government expenditure on education rose to 88,000 pounds in 1933.
- ➢ In 1922, the government opened up a technical School at Makerere College to start training people in the fields of health, carpentry and metal works.
- ➢ In 1924, the colonial government instituted the Phelps-stokes commission to re-examine the state of education in all the East African countries.
- ➢ In 1924, the government appointed Sir Eric Husey as the first director of education in Uganda.

- In 1926 more courses were introduced at Makerere College in the fields of teaching, agriculture and medicine and it started producing professionals.
- Still in 1926, the colonial government started the Student exchange program and many students came from as far as Kenya Tanzania, South Africa and Zambia.
- In the late 1920's teacher training colleges were built, e.g. in Ndejje, Nkozi and Kyambogo and these produced Grade II teachers.
- An inspectorate of schools was also set up to check on the standards of these Schools.
- The government also set up education commissions for example Phelps – stokes commission and De – la – war commission to continuously research on the progress of education in Uganda.
- In 1935, the colonial government linked Makerere to the college of Cambridge and the first group of Ugandans sat for the Cambridge certificate of education exams.
- In 1937, Makerere was recommended to become an institution of higher learning for the whole of E. Africa.

- In 1949, Makerere was linked to the University of London and it started offering degree courses.
- Its first graduates came out in 1953 that included Nelson Mandela and Julius Nyerere.
- From the late 1930's many schools were built and government increased funding in education.
- This increased enrollment in primary, Secondary, tertiary and technical schools.
- A sponsorship or Scholarship program was put in place to help students attain higher education.
- In 1964, all denomination schools (schools belonging to a particular faith) were abolished by the 1964 education Act).

Revision questions

1. a) Describe the developments in formal education in Uganda during the first half of the 20th century.

b) Why did the colonial government become interested in controlling education after 1920?

2. a) Explain the role played by the colonial government in promoting education in Uganda before independence.

b) How did these developments affect the people of Uganda up to independence?

WORLD WAR 1(1914 - 1918)

- This was the first global war that broke out in 1914.
- It was primarily a European war but people in East Africa found themselves joining in on the side of their colonial masters.
- The bigger part of the war was not fought in East Africa.
- However may people from East Africa were shipped to Europe , Burma , Malaysia and in the Middle east to fight on the side of either Britain or Germany.
- The war spread to East Africa mainly because the mistrust and suspicions between Britain and Germany, in Europe was extended to East Africa.

Why was East Africa involved in World War 1?

- ❖ Britain and Germany were the major war lords in Europe and since they had colonies in East Africa they extended their conflicts and suspicion to East Africa.
- ❖ Britain and Germany had colonies which were adjacent to each other and therefore this led to the involvement of East Africa in World War 1.
- ❖ Germany provoked Britain into the war because she wanted Britain to divert her attention and resources from the war in Europe.
- ❖ Britain had strategic reasons for example she wanted to use East Africa to protect her colonial interests in North Africa (Sudan and Egypt) and the Middle East.
- ❖ The East African countries were under military obligation to support their colonial masters and therefore they had to provide more fighters.
- ❖ Some Africans were already employed in the Kings African rifles (K.A.R) and when the war broke out, they definitely had to fight in the interest of the colonial master.
- ❖ East African was directly involved in the funding of the war because the colonial masters had business in E.Africa that generated revenue.

- ❖ Colonial powers recruited Africans to use them as human shields in the war mainly because Africans had proved to be very strong in any war or fight.
- ❖ The white settlers in East Africa joined the war because they had set up bases and businesses in East Africa which they had to protect.
- ❖ Some Africans fought out of ignorance i.e. some of them even volunteered to go Europe and fight for their colonial masters so that they could see what was in Europe.
- ❖ Some Africans were forcefully taken by the colonial masters because the colonialists needed troops.
- ❖ Some Africans wanted to prove to their colonial masters that they militarily strong and they could survive the war.
- ❖ Some Africans wanted to acquire skills of battle to use in their fights against colonialism upon their return to East Africa.
- ❖ The colonial masters had also tricked some Africans into joining the war i.e. some of them had been Promised Land, material benefits and jobs.

How East Africa got involved in World War 1

- It was Germany that provoked Britain into war by attacking her colonies first.
- The British used a stronger machinery to drive the Germans back into Tanganyika.
- Therefore the greater part of the war ended up being fought in Tanganyika.
- The British force was bigger with about 4250 soldiers compared to the German force of about 2750 soldiers.
- The Germans hoped to win the war through disorganizing the British and they therefore attacked the Uganda railway line at Voi.
- Under the skillful German commander Von Lettow Vorbeck the Germans managed to disorganize the British.
- The British did not sit back as they sent for troops from India, South Africa and they attacked port Tanga.
- More reinforcement was got from Rhodesia and Nyasaland and it arrived under General Smuts
- The German commander Von Lettow Vorbeck was utterly (completely) defeated by the bigger force of the British and he was forced out of E.A in 1917.

- The defeated German forces ran to Mozambique and by November 1918, the war had ended and peace slowly returned to the region.

Effects of the war on East Africa

- ✓ The war severely disrupted the economic development in East Africa because it was too costly to surpress.
- ✓ Agriculture greatly declined during the war because plantations were either destroyed or abandoned in order to concentrate on the war.
- ✓ Depopulation .The war led to massive depopulation especially in Tanganyika as many people were killed and others migrated to safer areas.
- ✓ It led to a period of famine and starvation because of the decline in agriculture.
- ✓ The war led to an influx of white settlers particularly into Kenya which led to Africans losing their land
- ✓ African attitude towards Europeans changed after the war and they started demanding for independence which led to the rise of African nationalism.

- ✓ Ranks and medals were awarded to those who had successfully fought in the war hence creating a new class of ex-service men.
- ✓ There was an outbreak and spread of diseases like meningitis, syphilis which were brought by the returning soldiers from Europe.
- ✓ Many ex-service men copied western cultures which they introduced in E.Africa. e.g dress code.
- ✓ There was massive destruction of property e.g railway lines, Villages, Buildings, which had taken years to build.
- ✓ Trade and commerce also suffered greatly during the war which situation led to the spread of poverty.
- ✓ The war ended with the defeat of Germany in 1918 and she was forced to surrender Tanganyika to the League of Nations.
- ✓ After the defeat of the Germans, the whole of the E.African territory came to be under the British.
- ✓ A number of reforms were introduced by British Tanganyika e.g in 1925, Sir Donald Cameroon introduced indirect rule in Tanganyika.
- ✓ There was increased exploitation from the British in E.Africa because they wanted to compensate for the

loses they made during world war for the loses they had made during world war

THE SECOND WORLD WAR (1939 - 1945)

- This was the second global war that broke out in 1939.
- Just like World War 1, it was Germany that was blamed for causing the war under Adolf Hitler.
- Due to Germany's wish to control the entire world, she ended up conflicting with other world superpowers e.g. Britain, France, and U.S.A.
- Germany formed an alliance with Italy and Japan to disorganize world peace and this war spread throughout the world in just a flash which led to East Africa's involvement.

Why did East Africa get involved in the War?

- East Africa was under military obligation to support its colonial master which was Britain at the time of the outbreak of the war.
- East Africa was directly involved in the funding of the war because she had to support her colonial master, Britain.

- East Africa's colonial master-Britain did not have enough troops to fight in the war and therefore she had to turn to East Africa for troops.
- Some ambitious personalities wanted to go and fight alongside the colonial master so that they could acquire skills which they would use to fight colonialism upon their return e.g. Waruhiu Itote who came to be known as General China spearheaded the Mau-Mau rebellion in 1954.
- Some people in Tanganyika supported Hitler hoping that Tanganyika would return to Germany and Britain could not let this happen, hence involving East Africa.
- The presence of Italy in Somalia and Eritrea also scared the British because these colonies were adjacent to East Africa particularly Kenya.
- Japan's involvement in the war also scared the British because they had to protect their interests across the Indian Ocean waters.
- The presence of such opponents in such areas caused suspicion and tension.
- Several battalions of the King's African Rifles (K.A.R) were stationed on the Somalia border.

- ❖ Troops moved into Kenya joined by contingents from Nigeria, Ghana e.t.c.
- ❖ Britain and Germany were already enemies in Europe and therefore their mistrusts and suspicions were extended to East Africa leading to her involvement.
- ❖ Africans had performed quite so well in World War 1, so the Europeans decided to use them again.
- ❖ Italy's involvement in the war forced the British to recruit more Africans in the King's African Rifles which was the colonial army.
- ❖ Thousands of East African soldiers went to Burma, India, Madagascar and Europe to join the war leading to East Africa's involvement.

Effects of the war on East Africa

- ➢ Many people were killed, wounded and others were permanently crippled in the military campaigns in Somalia, Burma and Ethiopia.
- ➢ Many people were forcefully recruited in the colonial army-K.A.R and they were forced to go and fight in foreign lands like Burma and Somalia.

- Trade was disrupted and exports declined. E.g. Ugandan coffee and cotton prices fell and many people lost their businesses.
- A lot of man power was devoted to fighting and agriculture was neglected, it led to reduced food production which led to an outbreak of famine.
- The family system was disrupted as men were forced to abandon their wives and children to go and fight in foreign lands like Burma.
- The war veterans also brought and spread venereal diseases and other sexually transmitted diseases like Syphilis and Gonorrhea.
- Many people in Tanganyika were imprisoned during the war especially those who had supported the Germans during the battle.
- The war led to serious depopulation as many people were taken to fight and others migrated to other regions.
- Since the ex-soldiers had acquired military skills during the war, they spearheaded the campaigns against colonialism upon their return e.g. General China led the Mau-Mau rebellion.

- The war sowed seeds of nationalism in East Africa especially in Kenya where Ex-soldiers formed militant groups like Mau-Mau.
- The ex-servicemen caused resettlement problems on their return e.g. they had no land and most of them wanted to stay in urban areas where there were no jobs.
- Italy was defeated during the war which forced her to surrender to the British and this led to the British extension of her colonial territory to include Port Kismayo, Somalia and southern Ethiopia.
- After the war, Tanganyika became a trusteeship of the British under a UNO provision towards self government.
- The war led to the formation of the UNO, which strongly de-campaigned colonialism and this led to the Independence of East African countries in the early 1960s.
- The British government directed technical schools and institutions to introduce and produce war equipment.
- Many European communities began to change their attitude towards Africans for the better.

How World War II led to the growth of Nationalism in Kenya

- **M**any people fought in the war and served in the Middle East, Burma, India, and Somalia where they fought alongside Europeans, Arabs and Indians.
- On their return to East Africa, the ex-servicemen spearheaded the independence struggles. This was due to the following:

- Ex-service men came back with a changed attitude towards colonialism. They had been exposed to better conditions in Europe and Asia and therefore wanted to fight poverty and misery in East Africa.
- Unemployment that resulted from the war forced ex-service men to join militant groups like Mau-Mau to fight the colonialists and improve their living conditions.
- It destroyed the myths about whites e.g. the war exposed the Africans and they were able to see that the white man could also die and flee in battles.
- British policy changed after the war e.g. Africans developed closer contacts with the British due to the fact that many ex-soldiers were allowed to attain education and grow crops.

- Africans learnt revolutionary ideas like liberty, equality and fraternity after realizing that in Europe, these were the major reasons as to why the Europeans were fighting each other.
- Kikuyu and Luo broke into Asian shops and they got a strong economic force which they used to support the Nationalistic movements like Mau-Mau.
- Africans were allowed to form political parties and even join the LEGCO and this led to African political activism.
- Formation of UNO also speeded up the growth of Nationalism mainly because the international body was against colonialism and encouraged Africans to demand for self rule.
- The war led to the rise of educated and prominent personalities like Jomo Kenyatta, Dedan Kimathi who were able to organize and mobilize the masses to achieve self rule.
- The war exposed the Africans to the value of solidarity and unity. The Africans were able to realize the need for a united force in their quest for independence.

- The war led to the emergence of new super powers e.g. USA and Soviet Union to replace Britain and Germany and gave their support to the Africans to fight for their independence.
- Africans learnt how to use military vehicles, sophisticated weapons and military tactics and upon their return to East Africa, they taught the local people.

Revision questions

1. a) Why was East Africa involved in the first world war of 1914 – 1918?

   b) What were the effects of this war on East Africa?

2. a) How did East Africa get involved in world war 1?

   b) How did World War 1 affect the people of East Africa up to independence?

3. a) Why was East Africa involved in the second World war of 1939 – 1945?

   b) What were the consequences of this war on the people of East Africa?

4. a) How did world war II contribute to the growth of nationalism in Kenya?

b) What problems were faced by the early nationalists in their struggle for independence?

THE RISE OF NATIONALISM IN EAST AFRICA

- Nationalism is the desire by a given group to achieve political, economic and social independence.
- It's also defined as the increased love for one's nation.
- Nationalism was characterized by formation of political parties and mass political awareness.

Factors that contributed to the rise of Nationalism in East Africa

❖ World War II led to the rise of nationalism in East Africa because it encouraged Africans to form nationalistic movements like Mau-Mau in Kenya.

❖ The high levels of unemployment and poverty made Africans form mass political movements like Mau-Mau to demand for better conditions.

- ❖ The influence of Christian missionaries who always stressed equality of all men before God also encouraged Africans to rise up and fight for their rights.
- ❖ Missionary education produced elites like Jomo Kenyatta, Apollo Milton Obote and Julius Nyerere who led the independence struggles.
- ❖ The emergence of an educated class of Africans also speeded up the independence struggles because these educated Africans provided the leadership e.g. Jomo Kenyatta, Julius Nyerere.
- ❖ The granting of independence to Asian countries like India and Pakistan in 1947 aroused nationalistic feelings among the East Africans since they also felt that they should be independent.
- ❖ The development of national languages like Swahili for Tanganyika and English for Uganda and Kenya created unity among Africans and it solved the language problem.
- ❖ The spread of socialism and communism by USSR and China also led to the rise of nationalism in East Africa because these countries were supporters of anti-colonialism.

- ❖ The emergence of new superpowers like USA and Russia after World War 1 also led to the rise of nationalism because they always stressed decolonization of African countries.
- ❖ The growth of Pan Africanism also led to the rise of nationalism e.g. they brought the notion of 'Africa for Africans' which created unity amongst the Africans.
- ❖ The 1941 Atlantic Charter published by President Roosevelt (USA) and Premier Churchill of Britain called for people to form their own governments under which to live.
- ❖ The formation of cooperative movements also led to the rise of nationalism. They became a platform for people to air out their grievances against the colonial government.
- ❖ Colonialism had its own evils like forced labour, heavy taxation and land grabbing by the Europeans and these forced Africans to rise up against European rule.
- ❖ The independence of Ghana in 1957 also gave morale to other countries to fight for their independence.

- ❖ Increased urbanization forced many people to migrate from villages to towns which exposed these people to new ideas of liberty, and equality which forced to form political parties.
- ❖ Support from Africans in Diaspora (blacks who were living abroad) in USA, England. These gave support to fellow Africans at home to rise against European rule.
- ❖ The Influence of the 1952 Egyptian revolution; this revolution was spearheaded by Colonel Nasser and he influenced nationalists by giving support to movements like Mau-Mau.
- ❖ The formation of the United Nations in 1945 also led to the rise of Nationalism in East Africa. The organization had an anti-imperialism policy and encouraged Africans to rise against European rule.

Problems faced by early nationalists

- ➢ Tribal differences greatly affected the independence struggles. E.g. in Uganda, the Baganda didn't want to unite with other tribes while in Kenya, KANU was accused of being a Kikuyu tribal grouping
- ➢ Differences in political ideologies also affected the work of early nationalists. E.g. in Kenya, KANU

favoured a unitary gov't while KADU wanted a federal gov't.

- Differences on how to achieve independence also affected the work of early Nationalists. E.g in Kenya, the Mau-Mau people preferred violence and others peaceful means.
- Lack of a uniform language also affected the work of early nationalists e.g. in Uganda, other people hated Luganda because of the already elevated position of Buganda.
- The death of leaders of Nationalistic movements e.g. General China in Kenya. This created a lot of fear among the local people and it created a leadership vacuum.
- Religious differences also affected the nationalist struggles. These were created by the missionaries and they made it hard for people to unite.
- The inferiority complex among Africans also affected them i.e. many of them underrated themselves and thought that they couldn't defeat the white man.
- Lack of funds also hampered the work of the nationalists e.g. they could not have all the supplies needed like guns and ammunitions.

- Some Africans collaborated with the colonialists and these weakened the nationalists i.e. they saw no need of fighting the whites.
- There was a problem of foreign interference e.g. in Kenya, the Mau-Mau was crushed by a force flown in from Britain.
- The high levels of illiteracy among the East Africans made it difficult for the nationalists to explain to them the need for independence.
- The poor transport and communication networks in East Africa also proved a problem to the nationalists e.g. it was not easy to communicate with people in the villages.
- The nationalists in Kenya and Uganda mainly concentrated in urban areas and denied themselves support from the majority rural population.
- The British policy of divide and rule also undermined the work of the nationalists. It created tribal thinking among tribes and this affected the unity.
- There were also clashes between the different leaders of the various nationalistic movements and these wrangles reduced on their effectiveness.

- Lack of proper organization and planning also affected the work of nationalists e.g. the Mau-Mau didn't have a clear plan of attack against the British.

POLITICAL PARTIES IN EAST AFRICA

- A political party is an association of persons whose major aim is to acquire state power.
- In East Africa, parties formed included: Kenya African National Union (KANU), Kenya African Democratic Union (KADU), Tanganyika African National Union (TANU), Democratic Party (D.P) Uganda National Congress (UNC), and Uganda Peoples' Congress (UPC).
- Most of these parties were formed and dominated by educated Africans.

Why were political parties formed?

- They were formed to fight for the independence of their respective countries.
- They were also formed to demand greater African representation on the Legislative council.

- ❖ Political parties wanted the extension of the voting franchise to the Africans since they had been denied the right to vote.
- ❖ The rise of Pan-Africanism also drove Africans to form political parties because they wanted to rule themselves.
- ❖ Political parties were also formed as a result of colonial rule and its evils like loss of land, forced labour, heavy taxation.
- ❖ They were also formed to fight against European exploitation of African resources like land, labour and minerals.
- ❖ The influence of the Second World War was also a factor in the formation of political parties as Africans who had fought in the war came back with the zeal to liberate fellow Africans.
- ❖ Political parties were formed to fight for the release of imprisoned political prisoners like KANU was partly formed to fight for the release of Mzee Jomo Kenyatta.
- ❖ Political parties were formed to act as vehicles (platforms or mouthpiece) for airing out African discontent against colonial rule.

- ❖ The high levels of poverty and unemployment also forced ex-servicemen to form political parties e.g. General China.
- ❖ The rise of African nationalism was also manifested (shown) through the formation of mass political parties.
- ❖ Political parties were also formed to fight the discriminatory tendencies of the whites e.g. in education, health and employment.
- ❖ Political parties were also formed to demand for the removal of restrictions on the cultivation of cash crops, trade and free movement.

The role/Achievements of Political Parties

- They contributed to the achievement of independence in their respective countries.
- Political parties fostered unity and brought different people and tribes together.
- They contributed to the freeing of political prisoners like Jomo Kenyatta by KANU.
- They enlightened and educated the masses about their rights in their respective countries.

- They led to the recognition of their countries nationally and internationally.
- Through boycotts, demonstrations and riots, they advocated for the participation of Africans in voting process.
- They advocated for the equality of all races and the establishment of multi-racial governments.
- They acted as platforms for explaining the colonial ills to the people especially in local languages that were understood by everyone.
- Political parties contributed greatly to the development of infrastructure like roads, schools and hospitals.
- As a result of their pressure, Africans were able to get white collar jobs.
- They contributed to the development of agriculture like the establishment of Busitema Agricultural College and Kibimba rice scheme in Uganda.
- They contributed to the attainment of republican status by the East African states e.g. Uganda in 1963 and Kenya in 1965.
- They led to the establishment of adult suffrage in East Africa.

Problems faced by the political parties

- ✓ Tribal differences led to disunity which delayed independence e.g. D.P for Baganda and UPC for Northerners
- ✓ Differences in political ideologies also led to power struggles e.g. UPC could not have the same plan with DP on how to achieve independence.
- ✓ Differences in languages created the problem of language barrier i.e. Uganda lacked a national language which also created disunity.
- ✓ Religious differences created disunity e.g. DP for Catholics and UPC for Protestants.
- ✓ Imprisonment of Charismatic national leaders created power vacuum at the top.
- ✓ Differences on how to achieve independence e.g. some wanted force and some wanted diplomacy.
- ✓ Inferiority complex of Africans i.e. they underrated their potential to fight the whites.
- ✓ Lack of funds to sustain their programmes made it difficult to spread awareness among the masses.
- ✓ Foreign interferences e.g. political parties were always not allowed to freely carry out their work.

- ✓ Some Africans collaborated with colonialists which weakened the work of political parties.
- ✓ High level of illiteracy made it very difficult for the leaders to convince the local people.
- ✓ Poor transport and communication to effectively spread ideas countrywide.
- ✓ Lack of proper organization made it difficult to achieve independence quickly.
- ✓ Nationalists mainly concentrated in urban areas and neglected the majority rural population.
- ✓ British policy of divide and rule worsened the levels of tribalism and created tribal thinking.
- ✓ The few educated Ugandans were comfortably employed in the gov't civil service and could not join the independence struggles.

THE ROAD TO INDEPENDENCE IN EAST AFRICA

TANGANYIKA

- ➢ On 9th December 1961, Tanganyika became the first East African state to achieve independence.
- ➢ It was steered to independence through the efforts of Mwalimu Julius Kambarage Nyerere and Tanganyika African National Union (TANU).

Role played by Tanganyika African National Union (TANU)

- TANU was formed on 7th July 1954 in Dar-es-salaam.
- It replaced Tanganyika African Association (TAA).
- Dr. Julius Kambarage Nyerere assumed leadership of the party.
- The party made it clear that Tanganyika was an African country and therefore Africans had to have majority seats in government.
- The party opened up offices all over the Tanganyika which united the people.
- In 1954, a UN mission was sent to Tanganyika proposing a planned constitutional process towards independence.
- In 1955, Nyerere visited the UN in New York to explain TANU's aims and press for support.
- Nyerere and TANU received a lot of sympathy from the UN that was against colonialism in Africa.
- TANU successfully mobilized Tanganyikans for self rule in the next two years.

- In 1958, TANU won a landslide victory in the Legislative Council elections largely due to its multi-racial policy.
- The wide spread use of Kiswahili as a national language also made it easy for the party to build a huge following.
- TANU defeated its only rival the United Tanganyika Party (UTP) that was formed in 1956 by some members of the Legco.
- After suffering a heavy defeat, UTP was disbanded unconditionally and this increased TANU's power and credibility.
- TANU planned the composition of the Legco to speed up the independence of Tanganyika.
- In the August 1960 elections, TANU swept the polls winning seventy out of seventy one African seats.
- During the voting, TANU promised Tanganyikans self rule, safe guarding their interests and introduction of complete adult voting.
- On 1st May 1961, Tanganyika was granted internal self rule under Dr. Julius Nyerere.

- Nyerere became the first prime minister and therefore TANU provided the first leaders of Tanganyika.
- TANU africanised the civil service and introduced special training scheme to accelerate a changeover.
- On 9th December 1961, the Duke of Edinburgh handed total independence to Tanganyika under Nyerere.
- In 1963, Tanganyika became a one party state under TANU.

MWALIMU JULIUS KAMBARAGE NYERERE

- He was born in March 1922 at Butiama near the Eastern shores of Lake Victoria.
- He was born to Burito Nyerere who was a Zenaki chief.
- He went to Musoma for his primary and Tabora School for his secondary education.
- In 1943, he joined Makerere University College Kampala for a diploma in education.
- While at Makerere, he formed the Makerere Boys of Tanganyika, an association of all Tanzanians at Makerere.

- In 1945, he returned to Tanganyika to start a teaching career at St. Mary's Tabora- a Catholic mission school.
- In 1949, he went for further studies at the University of Edinburgh in Scotland and attained a Masters degree in history, economics and philosophy.
- While in Britain, he met various Pan-Africanists like Kwame Nkrumah and Jomo Kenyatta who encouraged him to liberate his people.
- In 1952, he returned to Tanganyika and was elected Secretary of Tanganyika African Peoples' Welfare Association.
- He also became an active member of Tanganyika African Association (TAA).
- In 1953, he was elected president of the Tanganyika African Association which he reorganized to form an effective organ in national politics.
- On 7th July 1954, TANU was formed at Dar-es-salaam to replace TAA and Nyerere was elected president of the new party.
- The party was broad in outlook and Nyerere made it clear that TANU was opposed to tribalism and aimed at uniting all Tanganyikans for independence.

- Nyerere's non –racial tendencies soon endeared him to the governor, Sir Richard Turnbull.
- The two became good friends and always sat together to discuss government problems.
- In 1954, he presented the African case for self rule to the United Nations visiting mission.
- In 1955, he visited the UN trusteeship committee demanding independence for Tanganyika.
- Still in 1955, he was elected to the Legco but resigned after two years accusing it of not having a serious programme as far as speeding up the independence of Tanganyika was concerned.
- In 1956, he went back to the UN trusteeship committee demanding for African independence.
- However, in 1957, his meetings became violent and were banned by the colonial government.
- In December 1957, he was elected president of the Legco in order to diffuse the conflicts that had risen between the government and TANU.
- In September 1958, he led TANU to sweeping victory in all the Legco elections defeating its major rival United Tanganyika Party (UTP).

- In his rule, he encouraged unity, non-racial politics, spirit of freedom and hard work ‘’Uhuru na Kazi’’.
- In the August 1960 elections, he steered TANU to another landslide victory and it won seventy of all seventy one seats reserved for Africans in the Legco.
- On 1st May 1961, Tanganyika attained internal self rule and Dr. Julius Nyerere became the first prime minister.
- On 9th December 1962, Tanganyika got total independence from the British which the Duke of Edinburgh handed to Nyerere at Dar-es-salaam stadium.
- Nyerere became the first president of Tanzania.
- He retired from government service in 1985 and he died of Leukemia on 14th October 1999 at St. Thomas hospital in London.

Why did Tanganyika attain independence earlier than Uganda and Kenya?

- Tanganyika was gifted with able leadership of Julius Nyerere who acted as a unifying factor.

- Nyerere's friendly relations with the governor Sir Richard Turnbull with whom they always discussed Tanganyika's problems.
- The presence of Kiswahili as a unifying language also speeded up independence because it fostered unity.
- Tanganyika was a mandated territory of the UN and was being looked after by the British yet UN was against colonialism.
- Tanganyika lacked tribal and regional parties like it was the case in Uganda and Kenya which also promoted unity.
- There were no settler demands in Tanganyika like it was in Kenya where the white settlers wanted a say in government affairs.
- The close links that existed between UN and TANU also speeded up her independence campaigns.
- Nyerere was never imprisoned or his party banned like Kenyatta and UNC were banned from politics at one time.
- TANU lacked a strong rival and therefore it had a strong following from all the people of Tanganyika.

- Nyerere came from the Zenaki tribe which was one of the smallest tribes in Tanganyika which never caused tribal conflicts and feuds.
- Trade unions in Tanganyika were very active and strong compared to those in Uganda and Kenya which speeded up their demands for independence.

UGANDA

- On 9th October 1962, Uganda attained total independence from the British.
- This was mainly due to the role played by Apollo Milton Obote.

Dr. Apollo Milton Obote

- He was born on 28th December 1924 at Akokoro village in Lango, northern Uganda.
- He was born to a local village chief called Stanley Opeta.
- He started his education at Lira Protestant School and then to Gulu High School and Busoga College, Mwiri.
- He then joined Makerere University College in 1948 for an Arts degree which he never completed.

- In 1949, Obote led a students' strike in his second year at the university and he was expelled for political activism.
- After his expulsion, Obote was also denied a Visa by the Colonial government to study abroad.
- He later joined a British Engineering and Construction firm called Mowlem construction Company based in Jinja.
- When the company transferred to Kabeta in Kenya, he followed it but left it for Standard Vacuum Oil Company.
- While in Kenya, he was inspired by members of Mau Mau like Jomo Kenyatta, General China (Waruhiu Itote) and Dedan Kimathi. He had studied with some of them at Makerere.
- He stayed in Kenya until 1957 and when he returned to Uganda he was appointed chairman of the Uganda National Congress (UNC) Lango branch.
- In 1958, he was elected to the Legco representing Lango and he came one of the vocal members on the council.

- At the same time, he befriended Ignatius Kangave Musaazi the leader of UNC and Musaazi appointed Obote as UNC representative in Mbale.
- Later, Obote sacked Musaazi for travelling to London without the consent of the party.
- As a result, UNC lost its popularity and Musaazi was exiled in Gulu and later London.
- Obote then befriended William K Nadiope, a member of the Legco who had formed the Uganda Peoples' Union (UPU).
- Nadiope always moved with and introduced Obote as a son of Busoga to the masses but this was a mistake because it weakened UPU.
- In 1959, there was a split in UNC and Obote led the anti-Buganda wing.
- In 1960, he was awarded a honorary degree of Law of Long Island University in U.S.A.
- On 9th March 1960, UPU merged with Obote's UNC wing to form the Uganda Peoples' Congress (UPC).
- Obote assumed leadership of the new party with John Kakonge as Secretary General.

- The party became more popular as more prominent people joined it e.g. Jaberi Bidandi Ssali, Ali Kirunda Kivejinja and Dani Wadada Nabudere.
- In the 1961 elections, Obote's UPC lost to Ben Kiwanuka's Democratic Party (DP).
- Kiwanuka became the leader of the Legco and Obote became leader of the opposition.
- In the Legco, Obote strongly demanded for an advance towards self rule.
- On 1st March 1961, Uganda became self governing.
- in the same year, Obote was among those who attended the London conference where he greatly supported Buganda's federal demands.
- He was so tactical that he even decided to marry a Muganda lady called Miria Kalule which made him a darling of the Baganda.
- In April 1962, elections were organized and UPC got 37, DP got 24 and Kabaka Yekka (KY) got 21 votes.
- Obote decided to ally with KY to form a government and this was a victory for Obote.
- On 9th October 1962, Uganda got her independence with Obote as the Prime Minister.

- On 10th October 2005, Obote died in a Johannesburg hospital.

KENYA

- On 12th December 1963, Kenya finally attained independence from the British.
- Over 250,000 people gathered at the Uhuru stadium to witness the occasion.
- It was steered to independence through the efforts of Mzee Jomo Kenyatta and Kenya African National Union (KANU).

Role played by KANU towards the independence of Kenya

- KANU was formed in March 1960 by mainly African leaders in the Legco.
- James Gichuru was the party chairman/president, Oginga Odinga as the vice president and Tom Mboya was the General Secretary.
- The party largely drew its support from the Kikuyu and Luo tribes.
- It strongly opposed KADU's federal system and campaigned for a strong central unitary government.

- The party sensitized the Kenyans about the need for independence.
- It worked as a mouth piece for the Africans to voice out their problems.
- In 1960, it won a landslide victory in the elections but refused to form a government until Jomo Kenyatta was released.
- It organized boycotts, riots and demonstrations that helped speed up the independence of Kenya.
- It weakened tribal interests by being a mass political party although some people accused it of having only Kikuyu and Luo in its ranks.
- KANU established ties with other political parties that were also fighting for independence like TANU in Tanganyika and CPP in Ghana.
- It condemned land grabbing and disrespect for African cultures.
- KANU won international sympathy, support and respect from all over the world.
- It was involved in the formation of Mau Mau to liberate Kenya.
- Using Mau Mau, it made Kenya ungovernable to the whites.

- Using the philosophy of Harambee, national unity was fostered.
- KANU groomed leaders who were instrumental in the fights for Kenya's independence e.g. General China.
- KANU participated in the constitutional process that led to Kenya's independence.
- On 12th December 1963, Kenya successfully attained independence with Kenyatta as the president.
- The party therefore provided the first leaders of Kenya and formed the first government in Kenya.

Mzee Jomo Kenyatta

- He was born in 1893 at Nsenda near Nairobi.
- His first name was Kamau, but between 1909 and 1914, he attended a Presbyterian Mission School where he was baptized Johnston Kamau Wa'Ngenyi.
- Between 1922 to 1928, Kenyatta worked as a water inspector for Nairobi municipality.
- During this period, he was an active member of a Kikuyu political organisation and he became the voice of the workers demanding for better wages and housing facilities.

- In 1928, he was elected Secretary General of the Kikuyu Central Association whose main aim was to recover land lost to white settlers.
- He also became the editor of the Kikuyu Language Journal called ‘’Muigi Thania’’ (Unity).
- In 1929, he went to London as a representative of the Kikuyu Central Association and pleaded for the African loss of land to the colonial secretary. He returned to Kenya in 1930.
- In 1931, he left for England and studied anthropology at the London School of Economics.
- In 1945, he organized the Manchester Pan African Congress with Kwame Nkrumah, George Padmore and others.
- In July 1946, he returned to Kenya and he replaced James Gichuru as the leader of Kenya African Union (KAU), a party that demanded for more African representation on the Legco.
- He became an active member of Mau Mau and with General China, Dedan Kimathi and Tom Mboya as the leaders of the movement.

- During the same time, he also served as a principal of Githunguri Teacher Training College but his stay was short lived.
- He was sacked by the colonial government due to his growing popularity.
- Many KAU members were not impressed by Kenyatta's decision to support Mau Mau activities.
- In 1951, the party between split between the moderates and extremists who didn't believe in the activities of Mau Mau.
- Kenyatta stayed with the moderates because of the high respect he had earned himself and also stayed in contact with Mau Mau fighters.
- In the same year, Kenyatta presented a memorandum to the Colonial Secretary Griffith, containing African demand for self rule.
- In 1953, he was arrested on suspicion that he was the real power behind the Mau Mau guerilla activities.
- He was sentenced to seven years in prison with other leaders e.g. General China and Dedan Kimathi.

- In 1960, KANU was formed by African leaders in the Legco and they elected Kenyatta as president while still in prison.
- In 1961, he was released from prison and he assumed leadership of KANU.
- He was accused by some party members of being too town centered, radical and making KANU a tribal grouping of only Kikuyu and Luo.
- This led to the formation of a new party called KADU (Kenya African Democratic Union).
- Kenyatta tried to reconcile KADU and KANU but his attempts failed.
- In January 1962, he was elected to the Legco and during general elections, KANU won with an over whelming majority.
- In February 1962, Kenyatta attended the second Lancaster House Conference that was called to draw up a constitution for Kenya.
- In May 1963, elections were held and KANU won with eighty two seats and its rival KADU got forty one seats.
- On 1st June 1963, Kenya attained self rule and Kenyatta became prime minister.

- He chose all his ministers from all races and always stressed African unity.
- On 12th December 1963, Kenya achieved total independence at Uhuru stadium.
- Prince Philip handed over the reigns of power to Jomo Kenyatta who therefore became the first President of Kenya.
- In 1978, Kenyatta died.
- He was popularly known as ‘’Mzee’’ a Swahili word for old man.

Revision questions

1. a) What factors contributed to the growth of nationalism in East Africa between 1945 – 1960?

b) What obstacles/setbacks did the early nationalists face in their struggle for independence?

2. Describe the career and achievements of any two of the following in the history of East Africa.

(a) Apollo Milton Obote **(b)** Jomo Kenyatta **(c)** Julius Nyerere **(d)** Ignatius .K. Musaazi.

3. a) Why were political parties formed in East Africa?

b) What obstacles did they meet while carrying out their duties?

4. a) Why was there no political party in Uganda until 1952?

b) What role did Uganda National Congress play in the independence struggle of Uganda?

5. a) What were the achievements of political parties in the independence struggle of East Africa?

b) Why did Tanganyika get her independence earlier than Kenya and Uganda?

6. What were the contributions of any two of the following towards the independence struggle?

(a) The Uganda People's Congress (U.P.C)

(b) The Kenya African National Union (K.A.N.U)

(C) The Tanganyika African National Union (T.A.N.U)

END